

S T A N D A R D C H I N E S E  
A M O D U L A R A P P R O A C H

MODULE 8: TRAVELING IN CHINA (TVL)

August 1982

Copyright © 1980 by John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale,  
Roberta S. Barry and Thomas E. Madden

## PREFACE

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach originated in an interagency conference held at the Foreign Service Institute in August 1973 to address the need generally felt in the U.S. Government language training community for improving and updating Chinese materials to reflect current usage in Taipei and in Peking.

The conference resolved to develop materials which were flexible enough in form and content to meet the requirements of a wide range of government agencies and academic institutions.

A Project Board was established consisting of representatives of the Central Intelligence Agency Language Learning Center, the Defense Language Institute, the State Department's Foreign Service Institute, the Cryptologic School of the National Security Agency, and the U.S. Office of Education, later joined by the Canadian Forces Foreign Language School. The representatives have included Arthur T. McNeill, John Hopkins, and John Boag (CIA); Colonel John F. Elder, III, Joseph C. Hutchinson, Ivy Gibian, and Major Bernard Muller-Thym (DLI); James R. Frith and John B. Ratliff, III (FSI); Kazuo Shitama (NSA); Richard T. Thompson and Julia Petrov (OE); and Lieutenant Colonel George Kozoriz (CFFLS).

The Project Board set up the Chinese Core Curriculum Project in 1974 in space provided at the Foreign Service Institute. Each of the six U.S. and Canadian government agencies provided funds and other assistance.

Gerard P. Kok was appointed project coordinator, and a planning council was formed consisting of Mr. Kok, Frances Li of the Defense Language Institute, Patricia O'Connor of the University of Texas, Earl M. Rickerson of the Language Learning Center, and James Wrenn of Brown University. In the Fall of 1977, Lucille A. Barale was appointed deputy project coordinator. David W. Delling of the Language Learning Center and Charles R. Sheehan of the Foreign Service Institute also served on the planning council and contributed material to the project. The planning council drew up the original overall design for the materials and met regularly to review their development.

The writers worked as a team, in close cooperation both with the planning council and with the Chinese staff of the Foreign Service Institute. John H. T. Harvey developed the instructional formats of the comprehension and production self-study materials, with Lucille A. Barale and Roberta S. Barry writing the tape scripts and the student text. Mr. Harvey designed the communication-based classroom activities and wrote the teacher's guides, and Ms. Barale prepared the criterion tests. Starting with Module 7, Ms. Barale prepared both text and tape materials.

All Chinese language material was prepared or selected by Chuan O. Chao, Ng-chi Chen, Hsiao-jung Chi, Eva Diao, Jan Hu, Tsung-mi Li, and Yunhui C. ng, assisted for part of the time by Chieh-fang Ou Lee, and Joseph Yu Hsu ng. Anna Affholder, Mei-li Chen, and Henry Khuo helped in the preparation of a preliminary corpus of dialogues.

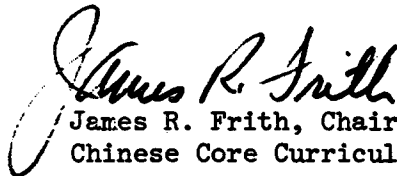
Administrative assistance was provided by Vincent Basciano, Lisa A. Bowden, Jill W. Ellis, Donna Fong, Renee T.C. Liang, Ann Madden, Susan C. Pola and Kathleen Strype.

The production of tape recordings was directed by Jose M. Ramirez of the Foreign Service Institute Recording Studio. The Chinese script was voiced by Chao, Ms. Chen, Ms. Diao, Ms. Hu, Mr. Khuo, Mr. Li, and Ms. Yang. The English script was read by Ms. Barale, Ms. Barry, Mr. Basciano, Ms. Ellis, Ann Madden, Susan C. Pola, and Ms. Strype.

The graphics were produced by John McClelland of the Foreign Service Institute Audio-Visual staff, under the general supervision of Joseph A. Dote, Chief of Audio-Visual.

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach was field-tested with the cooperation of Brown University, the Defense Language Institute, the Foreign Service Institute, the Language Learning Center, the United States Air Force Academy, the University of Illinois, and the University of Virginia.

The Defense Language Institute printed and distributed the preliminary materials used for field testing and has likewise printed and distributed this edition.

  
James R. Frith, Chairman  
Chinese Core Curriculum Project Board

## Table of Contents

Objectives for the Traveling in China Module . . . . .	1
About Module Seven . . . . .	3
Unit 1	
Map of the Peking Municipality . . . . .	4
Reference List . . . . .	5
Vocabulary List . . . . .	7
Reference Notes . . . . .	9
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	16
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	19
Unit 2	
Reference List . . . . .	33
Vocabulary List . . . . .	36
Reference Notes . . . . .	38
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	44
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	47
Unit 3	
Map of the Great Wall . . . . .	56
Reference List . . . . .	57
Vocabulary List . . . . .	61
Reference Notes . . . . .	63
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	71
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	73
Unit 4	
Map of the Thirteen Tombs . . . . .	82
Reference List . . . . .	83
Vocabulary List . . . . .	86
Reference Notes . . . . .	88
Tape 1 Review Dialogue. . . . .	96
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	98
Unit 5	
Map of a Typical Commune. . . . .	106
Reference List. . . . .	107
Vocabulary List . . . . .	109
Reference Notes . . . . .	111
Tape 1 Review Dialogue. . . . .	117
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	119

Unit 6	
Reference List . . . . .	131
Vocabulary List. . . . .	134
Reference Notes. . . . .	136
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	145
Tape 2 Workbook. . . . .	147
Unit 7	
Reference List . . . . .	157
Vocabulary List. . . . .	159
Reference Notes. . . . .	161
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	168
Tape 2 Workbook. . . . .	169
Unit 8	
Reference List . . . . .	175
Vocabulary List. . . . .	178
Reference Notes. . . . .	180
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	188
Tape 2 Workbook. . . . .	191
Vocabulary List for the Module . . . . .	201
List of Tapes in this Module . . . . .	213



## OBJECTIVES

General

The purpose of the Traveling in China Module (TVL) is to give you a look at some situations you might encounter on a trip to China and to provide you with the language skills you might need in those situations.

Before starting the Traveling in China Module, you should have completed the Meeting Module or have enough background in Chinese to pass the Meeting Criterion Test. As you move into the more advanced level of Chinese, you may find it helpful to review the optional modules: Personal Welfare, Restaurant, Hotel, Post Office and Telephone, and Car. If you have not yet done these modules, it may be necessary to do so now.

The Criterion Test for Traveling in China will focus largely on this module, but material from the first six modules, of course, will also appear.

Specific

When you have finished this module you should be able to:

1. Give an English equivalent for any Chinese sentence from the Target List.
2. Give a Chinese equivalent for any sentence from the Target List.
3. Discuss with a guide or travel agent your plans for a trip to China, what sort of things you want to see, what parts of the country you want to visit, and what aspects of the culture you want to make a point of learning about; and you should be able to name five different places or things that you would like to see.
4. Make a visit to a day-care center and understand the representative's speech about the facility; be able to ask and understand questions about when the day-care center was established, why day-care centers are needed, how the parents and children react to being separated, the goals of taking care of the children, how the children spend their time, and what happens when a child gets sick.
5. Make a visit to the Great Wall and understand the guide's talk about the structure; be able to ask and understand questions about where the wall begins and ends, when the wall was built, what conditions led to its being built, what its purpose was, how it was built, whether it was repaired, and what its dimensions are; and you should also be able to use the expressions for B.C. and A.D. and to convert distances from kilometers to Chinese miles and vice versa.

6. Make a visit to the Ming Tombs and understand the guide's talk about it; be able to ask and understand questions about the lay-out of the Ming Tombs park, when the tombs were built, the archaeological findings in the tombs, how the tombs were built, and where the materials came from.
7. Make a visit to a commune and understand the representative's talk about it; be able to ask and understand questions about when the commune was established, how large it is, how many people live and work there, what is grown there, whether production is mechanized, what is produced in addition to agricultural products, how the commune is organized administratively, and what health care facilities there are on the commune.
8. Make a visit to a commune and ask a commune member how the communes were originally organized, what conditions were like before communization, what stages there were leading up to communization, what conditions were like under these various stages, and how long it took to reach total communization throughout the country.
9. Make a visit to the Former Imperial Palace in Peking and understand the guide's talk about it, be able to ask and understand questions about when the palace was built, what dynasties used it as the imperial residence and governmental center, how large the palace and its grounds are, what certain halls or palace rooms are and what their use was, what the conditions were leading to the end of the Ch'ing Dynasty, what revolution overthrew the government, and who led the revolution.
10. Make a visit to a factory and understand the guide's talk about it, be able to ask and understand questions about what is produced there, what is the size or capacity of production and how much is produced each year, where the workers get their tools and materials, what wages and benefits the workers get, how many women workers there are, where the workers live, how much rent and utility fees they must pay, and what study programs are available to the worker.



### About Module 7

Starting with Module 7, there will be only two tapes per unit, instead of five.

Tape 1 will introduce the material on the Reference List, giving you a chance to learn to understand these sentences and to practice saying them. Tape 1 replaces both the C-1 and P-1 tapes which you used in Modules 1-6.

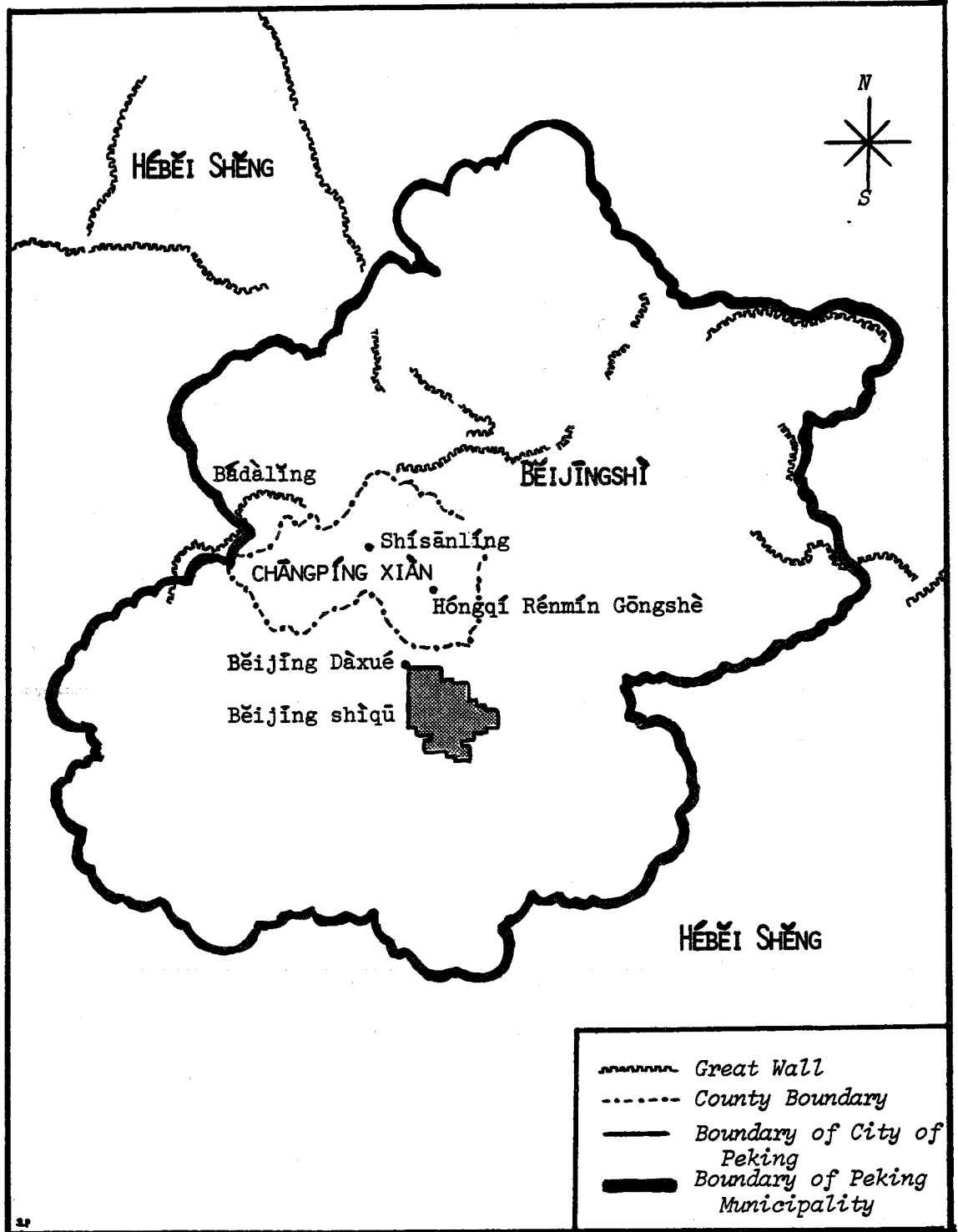
You will find that the Tape 1 is denser in its content and faster paced than either the C-1 or P-1 tapes. The number of new vocabulary items in each unit has been increased from 20-25 to 30-35. You will also notice that the sentences are increasing in length. Since you must learn to comprehend as well as say these sentences from a single tape, you will need to develop your own new ways of using the tape. You may find that you will need to rewind the tape and review the presentation of each sentence several times. Also there is less English explanation on the tape. Explanations which were formerly found on the C-1 and P-1 tapes are now found only in the Reference Notes. You will need to go over the Notes carefully since they are now your only source of grammatical explanation.

Tape 2 will replace the C-2 and P-2 tapes. Each Tape 2 will start off with a review of the sentences from the Reference List. This will be followed by three dialogues. You should listen to each dialogue until you understand it thoroughly. The workbook which accompanies Tape 2 describes the situation in which the conversation takes place and provides you with any additional vocabulary you may need to understand it. You will not be held responsible for these additional vocabulary items. The workbook also contains questions about each dialogue. You will need to prepare answers to these questions in Chinese based on the information in each dialogue. Your teacher may ask you to answer these and other questions about the conversation in class.

In this module we have attempted to use the language of modern-day People's Republic of China. Because most of the language in this module arises in situations where a representative of some organization is speaking to foreign visitors, the language often has an official flavor. Although you may not like to use this sort of language, it is important for you to master it in order to interact effectively when you have the opportunity. Since the first people whom foreign visitors meet are representatives of some sort, it is necessary to learn the language as it is presented here if your questions are to be appropriately phrased and elicit the information you want.

A note on romanizations: The Chinese language transcribed in this course is written in the Hanyu Pinyin System. However, when Chinese proper names occur as part of the English, the traditional postal service spelling is used for the names of provinces and several well-known places, and the Wade-Giles system is used in all other cases.

BOUNDARIES OF THE CITY OF PEKING AND PEKING MUNICIPALITY



Unit 1, Reference List

1. A: Wǒ jìhuà zài Běijīng  
fāngwèn yíge xīngqī.  
I plan to visit Peking  
for one week.
2. B: Wǒ bù zhīdào nín yào  
cānguānde zhòngdiǎn  
shì nǎixiē fāngmiàn.  
I don't know what aspect you  
would like to stress on your  
visit.
- A: Shì gōngyè fāngmiàn.  
The industrial aspect.
3. A: Wǒ duì nóngyè hěn  
yǒu xīngqū.  
I'm interested in agriculture.
4. A: Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ ānpái  
cānguānde dìfang,  
yuè duō yuè hǎo.  
Please arrange some places for  
me to visit, the more  
the better.
5. B: Wǒmǎn míngtiān qù cānguān  
Běijīng jiāoqū de  
rénmín gōngshè.  
Tomorrow we will go visit a  
people's commune in the  
suburbs of Peking.
6. A: Wǒ hěn xiǎng qù cānguān  
Gùgōng Bówuyuàn.  
I very much want to go visit the  
Former Imperial Palace Museum.
- B: Hǎo, wǒ hòutiān péi nǐ  
qù.  
Good, I'll accompany you there  
the day after tomorrow.
7. B: Zài Běijīngde zhèi yíduàn  
Chángchéng jiào Bádàlǐng.  
The section of the Great Wall  
near Peking is called Pataling.
8. B: Shísānlǐng jiù shì  
Mínglíng.  
The Thirteen Tombs are the  
Ming Tombs.
- B: Dàjiā dōu shuō Shísānlǐng,  
yīnwei nàr yǒu shísānge  
língmù.  
Everyone says the Thirteen Tombs  
because there are thirteen  
tombs there.
- B: Wàiguo péngyou dōu shuō  
Mínglíng, yīnwei nà shì  
Míngcháode língmù.  
Foreigners all say Ming Tombs  
because they are tombs from  
the Ming Dynasty.

9. A: Wǒ yě tīngshuō Běijīng Dàxué  
yǒu zìjǐ bānde gōngchǎng. I have also heard that  
Peking University has  
its own factory.
- B: Wǒ shìshì gěi ni ānpái  
yíxià. I'll try to arrange it  
for you.
10. A: Wǒ hái tīngshuō xuésheng  
yě cānjiā láodòng, shì ma? I have also heard that students  
participate in labor, is  
that right?
- B: Búdàn xuésheng, lián  
gōngzuò rényuán měinián  
dōu cānjiā yídiǎr  
láodòng. Not only students, even  
staff members, each year  
participate in some labor.
11. B: Xīngqīyī xiàwǔ wǒmen qù  
cānguān yíge yòuéryuán. Monday afternoon we will go  
visit a kindergarten.
- A: Shénme yòuéryuán? What kindergarten?
- B: Wǒmen qù kàn yíge quántuō  
yòuéryuán. Cānguān  
quántuō yòuéryuán bǐ  
rìtuō yòuéryuán yǒu  
yìsi. We'll go see a full-care  
kindergarten. Visiting a  
full-care kindergarten is more  
interesting than visiting a  
day-care kindergarten.
12. B: Yīhòu nèi liǎngtiān nín  
kànkàn qíngkuàng, hái  
xiǎng qù shénme dìfang,  
wǒmen zài zuò qītāde ānpái. As for the two days following th  
take a look at the situation  
and what other places you want  
to go, and we'll make further  
arrangements.

- (Not on tape) -

13. Dōngběi

Manchuria

14. shè

short for gòngshè, 'commune'

Vocabulary

npái	to arrange (see also WLF-1, HTL-1)
ádǎlǐng (Bādǎlǐng)	Pataling; area northwest of Peking, where the Great Wall is located
ānguān	to visit as a tourist, to sightsee
ānjiā	to participate in
lǎjiā	everyone
Dōngběi	Manchuria
āngmiàn	aspect, side
āngwèn	to visit, to pay a formal visit
gōngchǎng	factory
gōngshè	commune
gōngyè	industry
gōngzuò rényuán	staff personnel
hùgōng Bówuyuán	the Imperial Palace Museum
lǎoqū	suburb
láodòng	to labor
lián...dǒu/yě	even
língmù	tomb or mausoleum (of a distinguished person)
míngcháo	Ming Dynasty
mínglíng	the Ming Tombs
nóngyè	agriculture
qíngkuàng	situation, conditions
qí tā	the others, the remainder
quántuō	full-care, boarding (kindergarten)
rénmín gōngshè	people's commune
rényuán	personnel
rìtuō	day-care (kindergarten)
shí sān líng	'The Thirteen Tombs'
shìshì	to try, to try on, to try out (see also WLF-3)

xìngqū

yòu'eryuán  
yuè duō yuè hǎo

zhòngdiǎn

interest

kindergarten  
the more the better

key point, central point

Unit 1, Reference Notes

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A: Wǒ jìhuà zài Běijīng<br>fāngwèn yíge xīngqī.                        | I plan to visit Peking<br>for one week.                                |
| 2. B: Wǒ bù zhīdào nín yào<br>cānguānde zhòngdiǎn<br>shì něixiē fāngmiàn. | I don't know what aspect<br>you would like to stress<br>on your visit. |
| A: Shi gōngyè fāngmiàn.   | The industrial aspect.   |

Notes on Nos. 1 and 2

fāngwèn, cānguān: Both of these verbs mean 'to visit'. While in many situations you can use either fāngwèn or cānguān, there are occasions where one and not the other is appropriate. Cānguān means 'to visit' in the sense of 'sightsee'. You can cānguān monuments, museums, and parks. Fāngwèn is used to mean 'to visit' when there will be formal interaction between people. Fāngwèn is also used when talking about formal visits between leaders, or visits to factories or offices where the visitors will have a chance to talk with the workers there.

... nín yào cānguānde zhòngdiǎn shì něixiē fāngmiàn?: The noun zhòngdiǎn means 'key point, strong point, central point'. The noun fāngmiàn means 'area, side, facet, aspect'. A fairly literal translation of the sentence above might be 'The key points which you want to visit are which aspects?'

Here are some example sentences using fāngmiàn:

Liǎng fāngmiàn de yìjian  
wǒmen dōu yīnggāi  
tīngting.

We should listen to the  
opinions of both sides.

Wǒ jīntiān yùbei gēn  
nǐmen tántán Zhōngguó  
jīngjì fāngmiàn de  
wèntí.

I am prepared to speak with  
you today about the  
economic side of China's  
problems.

3. C: Wǒ duì nóngyè hěn  
yǒu xìngqū.

I'm very interested in  
agriculture.

Notes on No. 3

duì ... yǒu xìngqū: 'To be interested in ...' More literally 'to have interest towards...'. Use the prepositional verb duì plus the subject of interest before the verb phrase yǒu xìngqū (yǒu and the noun xìngqū).

Tā duì Měiguó jīngjī  
qíngkuāng hěn yǒu  
xìngqū.

He is very interested in  
the American economic  
situation.

4. A: Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ ānpái  
cānguānde dìfang,  
yuè duō yuè hǎo.

Please arrange some places  
for me to visit, the more  
the better.

Notes on No. 4

yuè ... yuè ...: This pattern is used to express the idea 'the more ... the more...'. You can only use verbs or verb phrases to fill in the blanks. Here are some examples:

Zhèiběn shū wǒ yuè  
kàn yuè yǒu xìngqū.

The more I read this book, the  
more interested I get in it.

Wǒ yuè xiǎng yuè juéde  
tā shuōde huà bú duì.

The more I think about it  
the more I feel that  
what he says isn't right.

Lái kāi huìde rén yuè  
duō yuè hǎo.

The more people that come  
to the meeting the better.



A common way to use the yuè ... yuè ... pattern is with the verb lái in the first position. The yuè lái yuè ... pattern means 'increasingly ...'.

Tiānqi yuè lái yuè  
nuǎnhuo.

The weather is getting  
warmer and warmer.

5. B: Wǒmen míngtiān qù cān-  
guān Běijīng jiāoquēde  
yíge rénmin gōngshè.

Tomorrow we will go visit  
a people's commune in  
the suburbs of Peking.

### Notes on No. 5

rénmín gōngshè: 'People's commune' You've seen rénmín before in phrases such as rénmínbì, 'People's currency'. Rénmín means 'people' in the sense of 'citizens of the country'.

6. A: Wǒ hěn xiǎng qù cānguān  
Gùgōng Bówuyuàn.

I very much want to visit  
the Imperial  
Palace Museum.

B: Hǎo, wǒ hòutiān péi nǐ  
qù.

Good, I'll accompany you  
there the day after  
tomorrow.

### Notes on No. 6

Gùgōng Bówuyuàn: 'The (former) Imperial Palace Museum' This was the palace of the ruling families of the Ming and Ch'ing Dynasties. It is located in the center of Peking. In conversation it is sometimes referred to simply as the Gùgōng.

7. B: Zài Běijīngde zhèi yíduàn  
Chángchéng jiào Bādǎlǐng.

The section of the Great  
Wall near Peking is  
called Pataling.

### Notes on No. 7

This sentence is a good example of the the word order to be used when there are modifiers, specifiers (zhèi, nèi, etc.), and counters (-ge, -duàn, etc.) before the noun which is modified. The order is:

- 1) modifying phrase with de (Zài Běijīngde)
- 2) specifier and counter (zhèi yíduàn)
- 3) modified noun. (Chángchéng)

Bādǎlǐng: Pataling, also pronounced Bādǎlǐng, actually refers to a mountain area north of Peking where the Great Wall is located. Since the Great Wall is the main thing of interest there, when people say they are going to Bādǎlǐng it is understood that they are going to the Great Wall.

8. B: Shísānlíng jiù shí  
Mínglíng. The thirteen tombs are  
the Ming Tombs.
- B: Dàjiā dōu shuō Shísānlíng,  
yīnwei nār yǒu shísānge  
língmù. Everyone says 'Thirteen  
Tombs' because there  
are thirteen tombs there.
- B: Wàiguo péngyou dōu shuō  
Mínglíng yīnwei nà shí  
Míngcháode língmù. Foreigners all say Ming  
Tombs because they are  
tombs from the Ming  
Dynasty.

Notes on No. 8

-líng and língmù: Both of these words are translated as 'tomb'. The word língmù is the general word for 'tomb'. The word -líng is the word for 'tomb' which is used to form a proper name, as in Zhōngshānlíng, 'Sun Yatsen's Tomb'.

9. A: Wǒ yě tīngshuō dàxué yǒu  
zìjǐ bānde gōngchǎng. I have also heard that  
the university has its  
own factory.
- B: Wǒ shìshí gěi nǐ ānpái  
yíxià. I'll try to arrange it  
for you.

Notes on No. 9

gōngchǎng: 'factory' In the sentence above, the American refers to the university-managed factory. Many universities in China have factories which are run by students and faculty. These factories serve two purposes. One is to give the students an opportunity to learn on-the-job skills, similar to some of the work-study programs in American universities. The other is to give the students an opportunity to participate in labor.

shìshi: 'to try, to attempt, to try out' Here are some examples:

Zhèijiàn yifu hěn hǎo  
kàn. Nǐ shìshi kàn,  
héshi bu héshi.

This piece of clothing  
is very attractive.  
Try it on, see if it  
fits.

Zhèige xīn chē hěn piào-  
liang, ràng wǒ lái  
shìshi, hǎo bu hǎo kāi.

This new car is very pretty.  
Let me try it out  
and see if it is easy  
to drive.

1C. A: Wǒ hái tīngshuō xuésheng  
yě cānjiā láodòng,  
shì ma?

I have also heard that  
students participate  
in labor, is that right?

B: Búdàn xuésheng, lián  
gōngzuò rényuán, měinián  
dōu cānjiā yìdiǎr  
láodòng.

Not only students, even  
staff members, each year,  
participate in some  
labor.

Notes on No. 10

cānjiā: 'To participate, to take part in something'

Wǒmen míngtiān yào kāi  
yíge huì. Qǐng nǐ yě  
lái cānjiā, hǎo bu hǎo?

We are going to have a  
meeting tomorrow.  
Please come and take  
part, okay?

láodòng: 'labor' or 'to labor', 'to do physical work'  
In the PRC the phrase cānjiā láodòng, literally 'to participate in  
labor', is often used to say someone does physical labor.

Zhèiwèi lǎo rén shēntǐ  
hěn jiànkāng. Qīshí suì le,  
hái néng láodòng.

This old person's health  
is very good. He's seventy  
years old and still  
can do labor.

Tāmen jiā yǒu sān gè rén  
cānjiā láodòng.

In their family there are  
three people who are  
taking part in physical  
work.

lián ... dōu: 'Even ... (all)' Because the word lián can occur at the beginning of a sentence or a clause, it has been called a connective, like kěshi or suǒyǐ. Because it seems to take an object, and occurs before the main verb in the sentence, it has also been called a prepositional verb, like cóng or gěi. There are exceptions to both of these generalizations. You may find it helpful to think of lián simply as an adverb. Like other adverbs, the position of lián in the sentence may vary, but it always occurs before the verb. Lián can be followed by nouns or verb phrases. Either the adverb dōu or the adverb yě must be used in a sentence with lián. Here are some examples.

Nèige hái zǐ lián táng  
dōu bù xǐhuan chī le.

That child doesn't even like to  
eat candy anymore.

Tā jīntiān bù shūfu. Lián  
fàn yě bù xiǎng chī le.

He isn't feeling well  
today, he won't even  
eat.

Lián wǒ qù yě bù xíng.

Even if I go it won't  
work out.

Tā mǔqīn zǒu le. Tā lián  
chūlai yě bù chūlai le.

His mother has gone. He  
won't even come out.

gōngzuò rényuán: 'Staff member', literally 'Working personnel' In this situation gōngzuò rényuán refers to white-collar workers other than the faculty members at the university such as administrators. In other situations, gōngzuò rényuán may refer to other types of white-collar workers. It is used in contrast to gōngren, 'workers'.

11. C: Xīngqīyī xiàwǔ wǒmen qù  
cānguān yí gè yòu'éryuán.

Monday afternoon we  
will go visit a  
kindergarten.

A: Shénme yòu'éryuán?

What kindergarten?

C: Wǒmen qù kàn yí gè quán tuō  
yòu'éryuán. Cānguān  
quán tuō yòu'éryuán bǐ  
rì tuō yòu'éryuán yǒu  
yì sī.

We'll go see a full-care  
kindergarten. Visiting a  
boarding kindergarten  
is more interesting  
than visiting a day-  
care kindergarten.

Notes on No. 11

yòuéryuán: 'Kindergarten' The Chinese system of day-care facilities provides nurseries, tuōérsuǒ, for children up to three years of age, and kindergartens, yòuéryuán, for children from three to six years. Literally, yòuéryuán is 'yòuér', 'young child', plus yuán, 'garden'.

quántuō yòuéryuán/rìtuō yòuéryuán: There are two kinds of Chinese kindergartens: quántuō yòuéryuán, 'full-care kindergartens', where children board from Monday through Saturday, and rìtuō yòuéryuán, 'day-care kindergartens', where children spend part of the day while their parents work.

12. C: Yǐhòu nèi liǎngtiān nín  
kànkàn qíngkuàng, hái  
xiǎng qù shénme dìfang,  
wǒmen zài zuò qítāde  
ānpái.

As for the two days following that, take a look at the situation, and what other places you want to go, and we'll make further arrangements.

Notes on No. 12

qítā: 'the other one, the others'

qíngkuàng: 'situation, conditions' You'll often hear this word used in phrases such as zài...qíngkuàngxià, 'under... conditions'.

hái xiǎng qù ...: A closer translation of the rest of the sentence would be as 'if ... (then) ...' clauses: 'and if you want to go to any other places, we'll make further arrangements'.

Unit 1, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

(An American talks with his guide at his hotel about the plans for his trip in China.)

- B: Mǎikè'ěr Jiàoshòu, nín xiūxiào le? Chīguo fàn le ma? Professor McKellar, did you rest well? Have you eaten?
- A: Xiūxile yíhuìr. Gāng chīguo fàn. Zhèrde cāntīng zhēn bú cuò. Zhōngcān, Xīcān dōu fēicháng hǎo. I rested awhile. I've just eaten. The dining room is very good. Both the Chinese food and the Western food are extremely good.
- B: Mǎikè'ěr Jiàoshòu, nín jìhua zài Běijīng fǎngwèn duō jiǔ? Yǐhòu xiǎng qù xiē shénme dìfang? Wǒmen jìhua jìhua, ānpái yíxià. Bù zhīdào nín yào cānguānde zhōngdiǎn shì nǎixie fāngmiàn. Professor McKellar, how long do you plan to visit Peking? After that where do you want to go? Let's do some planning and make some arrangements. I don't know what aspect you would like to stress on your visit.
- A: Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì lái Zhōngguó. Duì shénme dōu yǒu xìngqù. Wǒ zài Zhōngguó yígòng sānge xīngqī; zài Běijīng zhǐ néng zhù yíge xīngqī. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ ānpái cānguānde dìfang, yuè duō yuè hǎo. Yǐhòu wǒ xiǎng qù Dōngbēi, Shànghǎi, Wúhàn, cānguān gōngchǎng. This is my first time in China. I'm interested in everything. I'm in China for three weeks altogether. I can only stay in Peking for one week. Please arrange some places for me to visit, the more the better. After that, I'd like to go to Manchuria, Shanghai or Wuhan to visit factories.
- B: Nà hǎo. Nín duì nóngyè yǒu xìngqù ma? Míngtiān shàngwǔ wǒmen qù cānguān Běijīng jiāoqū yíge rénmin gōngshè, hǎo bu hǎo? All right. Are you interested in agriculture? How about going to visit a people's commune in the suburbs of Peking tomorrow morning?
- A: Hǎo, nà dàgài yào yòng duōshao shíjian? Fine, how long will that probably take?
- B: Wǒ gūji yào yíge shàngwǔ. I estimate that it will take the whole morning.
- A: Xiàwǔ ne? And the afternoon?

- B: Xiàwú wǒ kéyǐ péi nǐ huòzhe nǐ zìjǐ dào Gùgōng Bówuyuàn qù. Lí fàndiàn hěn jìn, kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù. Gùgōng, dìfang hěn dà. Wǒ xiǎng yíge xiàwú kàn-buwán. Guò liǎngtiān nǐn yǒu gōngfú kéyǐ zài qù yíci.
- In the afternoon I can accompany you or you can go yourself to the Imperial Palace Museum. It's not far from the hotel. You can walk there. The Palace is large. I don't think you can see it all in one afternoon. In a few days if you have time you can go again.
- A: Hòutiān ne?
- And the day after tomorrow?
- B: Xīngqīliù wǒ xiǎng ānpái nǐ qù Bádǎlǐng hé Shìsānlǐng.
- I'd like to arrange for you to go to Pataling and Shihsanling Saturday.
- A: Nǐ shuō shénme?
- What did you say?
- B: Ōu, Bádǎlǐng...jiù shì Chángchéng. Zài Běijīngde zhèi yíduàn jiào Bádǎlǐng. Shìsānlǐng ne...jiù shì Mínglíng. Wǒmen jiào Shìsānlǐng yīnwei nàr yǒu shì-sāngē língmù. Wàiguo péngyou dōu shuō Mínglíng, yīnwei nà shì Míngchàode língmù. Xīngqītiān dàjiā dōu xiūxi, bù hǎo ānpái. Nǐ yě xiūxi xiūxi. Zìjǐ suǐbiàn dào jiēshàng zǒuzou, mǎimai dōngxi, huòshì dào jǐge gōngyuánr qù kànkàn.
- Oh Pataling...that's the Great Wall. The section near Peking is called Pataling. Shihsanling...that's the Ming Tombs. We call it Shihsanling because there are 13 tombs there. Foreigners call it the Ming Tombs because they are tombs of the Ming Dynasty. Because everyone rests on Sunday, it is not easy to arrange things. You should rest too. You can go on your own, take a walk on the street, buy things, or go to some parks and look around.
- A: Hǎo.
- Good.
- B: Xīngqīyī wǒ zhǔnbèi gěi nǐ ānpái fāngwèn Běijīng Dàxué.
- I'm preparing for you to visit Peking University on Monday.
- A: Hěn hǎo. Wǒ tèbié xiǎng hé Zhōngguó jiāo jīngjì-xuéde jiàoshòu duō tántan. Wǒ yě tīngshuō dàxué yǒu zìjǐ bānde gōngchǎng. Wǒ yě xiǎng cānguān cānguan, xíng bu xíng?
- Great. I especially want to talk at length with Chinese professors of economics. I have also heard that the university runs its own factory. I'd like to visit that too, is that all right?
- B: Wǒ shìshì ānpái yíxià.
- I'll try to arrange it.

- A: Wǒ hái tīngshuō xuéshēng yě cānjiā láodòng, shì ma?
- B: Duì. Búdàn xuéshēng, lián gōngzuò rényuán měinián dōu cānjiā yìdiǎr láodòng. Xīngqīyī xiàwǔ wǒmen qù cānguān yíge yòuéryuán.
- A: Shénme yòuéryuán?
- B: Wǒmen qù kàn yíge quán-tuō yòuéryuán. Cānguān quán-tuō yòuéryuán bǐ rì-tuō yòuéryuán yǒu yìsi.
- A: Hěn hǎo.
- B: Mǎikèěr Jiàoshòu, yǐhòu liǎngtiān nín kànkàn qíngkuàng, hái xiǎng qù shénme dìfang, cānguān shénme, wǒmen zài tántan zài zuò qítāde ānpái. Nín kàn zhèiyang hǎo bu hǎo?
- A: Hǎo. Fēicháng hǎo.
- I've also heard that the students participate in labor, is that right?
- Yes. Not only students, but even staff personnel participate each year in some labor. Monday afternoon we'll go visit a kindergarten.
- What kindergarten?
- We'll go see a full-care kindergarten. It's more interesting to go visit a full-care kindergarten than it is to go visit a day-care kindergarten.
- Very good.
- Professor McKellar, as for the two days following that, see what the situation is, and we'll talk some more and make further arrangements about what other places you want to go and what you want to see.
- Good. Very good.



Unit 1, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

This exercise contains a conversation in which an American talks with his guide in Peking about the plans for the rest of his trip.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 22 as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

zhìzào	to manufacture
tuōlājī	tractor
shǐyòng	to employ, to make use of
Dōngběi	Manchuria (required)
píngyuán	a plain
guóyíng nóngchǎng	state farm
zhìzào chǎng	manufacturing plant
Yìhéyuán (Yíhéyuán)	the Summer Palace
Tiānjīn	Tientsin
chéngshì	city
Shěnyáng	a city in Manchuria, formerly Mukden
Anshān	a city in Manchuria

Guilin

Kueilin, Capital of Guangxi province;  
a famous scenic city in Southern  
China

Note: In this conversation you will see the conjunction hé used between two verbs.

Wǒ xiǎng kànkàn nǐmen  
zěnmeyàng shǐyòng hé  
zhìzào tuōlājī.

I'd like to see how you use and  
manufacture tractors.

In older usage, hé was restricted to being used between two nouns or noun phrases.

### Exercise 3

In this exercise you'll hear a conversation in which an American professor of sociology arrives at the airport in Peking and later, after a rest, discusses the plans for her trip with her guide.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, turn to page 22 and answer the questions.

Here are the new expressions you will need to understand this conversation:

yílùshang	while traveling, while on the way
shǒuxù	procedures, customs, formalities
hái	fairly, pretty, rather
shèhuìxué	sociology
shèhuì	society
gè	the various..., each, every
guānyu	about, regarding
dàduōshù	the majority
gǎo	to do (something)
jiāting	family
Yìhéyuán (Yìhéyuán)	the Summer Palace
Rénmín Dàhuìtáng	National People's Congress Building
liánxi	to contact someone
gāi	should, ought; it's about time to...

ote: In the Chinese speaker's last line of the conversation, the verb zhǎo is used to mean 'come around to get (someone), come around to see (someone)', as in zhǎo péngyou, 'to go see a friend'.

#### Exercise 4

In this exercise you will again hear an American discuss his plans for his trip in China with his guide.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions which are found on page 23.

For this exercise you will need the following new words and phrases:

shěng	to save
tīng	to listen to, to follow
xiàng	to be like, to resemble
Yìhéyuán (Yìhéyuán)	the Summer Palace
-fāng	area
Guìlín	Kueilin, a scenic city in Guǎngxī Province
Dàtóng	Tat'ung, a city in northern Shansi Province
Tàiyuán	T'aiyüan, capital of Shansi Province
gǔjì	ancient remains, ruins
gǔdū	ancient capital
Zhōngshānlíng	the name of Sun Yatsen's tomb
jiànzhù	to build, to construct
Wúxī	Wusih, a city in Kiangsu Province
Tàihú	T'aihu, a lake in Wusih
Xīhú	West Lake
měi	to be beautiful
chéngshì	city

měide xiàng huà yíyàng

as beautiful as a painting

liánxi

to contact someone (about a matter)

gāi

should, ought; it's about time to...

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why is the American interested in industrial and agricultural conditions?
2. In addition to touring and visiting, what else would the American like to do?
3. How long will he be staying in China this time?
4. What does the guide suggest is a good place to see tractors in use?
5. Why does the guide suggest the American visit Shanghai?
6. When it comes to having a good time, what is the best place to visit?
7. Where does the guide suggest the American visit first?
8. What is the suggested schedule for the rest of the trip?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation found on page 24 . You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Ms. White want to stress on her visit?
2. What aspects of society is she particularly interested in?
3. How long will Ms. White be visiting in China?
4. What sorts of places does she want to visit?
5. What specific places does the guide suggest she visit in Peking?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a

Look at the translation for this conversation on page 27 . You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

#### Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. How long is Mr. Black staying in China?
2. What is the main reason he has come to China?
3. How does he know about China's famous scenic places?
4. Why does Mr. Black say that he will follow his guide's suggestion as to which places to go?
5. What places does the guide suggest he visit in Peking?
6. What places in the south does the guide suggest he visit?
7. What is the schedule that the guide finally gives him? Where does he go after Peking? After Sian? After Shanghai?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation on page 30 . You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

In this dialogue you will hear the sentence Xiànzài wǒmen kě bu kéyǐ xiǎntān nǐde cānguan fǎngwèn jīhua?. Notice the question is formed using a variation of the VERB BU VERB pattern. There only the first syllable of kéyǐ is used in the first part of the pattern. This also happens with the verb zhīdao, as in Nǐ zhī bu zhīdao?

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

C: Dàiwéisi Xiansheng, zǎo.

Good morning, Mr. Davis.

A: Zǎo, Xiǎo Wáng.

Good morning, Xiǎo Wáng.

C: Chī zǎofàn le ma?

Have you had breakfast yet?

A: Chīguò le.

Yes, I have.

C: Wǒmen tántan nǐ cānguān fāngwèn de jǐhua, hǎo bu hǎo?

Let's discuss the plans for your visit, all right?

A: Hǎo.

All right.

C: Nǐ zhèicì lái Zhōngguó fāngwèn de zhòngdiǎn shì něixie fāngmian?

What aspects would you like to stress on your visit to China this time?

A: Wǒmen gōngsī shì zhìzào tuōlājī de. Zhèicì pài wǒ lái shì kànkan Zhōngguó de gōngyè hé nóngyè fāngmiàn de qíngkuàng. Wǒ xiǎng kànkan nǐmen zěnyàng shǐyòng hé zhìzào tuōlājī. Chūle cānguān fāngwèn yǐwài wǒ yě yào dào yǒu míngde fēngjǐng hǎode dìfang qù wánwán. Zhèi shì wǒ dìyī cì dào Zhōngguó lái. Wǒ zài Měiguó de shíhou jiù kànle yīxiē shū. Wǒ zhīdao Zhōngguó yǒu hěn duō hěn piàoliangde dìfang. Wǒ hěn xiǎng qù kànkan.

Our company manufactures tractors. They sent me here this time to have a look at industrial and agricultural conditions in China. I'd like to see how you use and manufacture tractors. Besides touring and visiting, I'd also like to go relax at some famous scenic spots. This is my first time in China. When I was in America I read some books, so I know that China has a lot of beautiful places. I'd like very much to go see them.

C: Nǐ zhèicì zài Zhōngguó keyi zhù duō jiǔ?

How long will you be able to stay in China this time?

A: Sānge xīngqī.

Three weeks.

C: Shǐyòng tuōlājī zuì duō de dìfang shì Dōngběi. Dōngběi yǒu dà píngyuán. Yǒu hěn duō guóyíng nóngchǎng. Yě yǒu hěn duō tuōlājī zhìzào chǎng. Língwài, zài Shànghǎi yě yǒu tuōlājī zhìzào chǎng. Shànghǎi fùjìn de hěn duō rénmin gōngshè dōu

The place where tractors are used the most is Manchuria. Manchuria has large plains. There are a lot of state farms. There are also a lot of tractor manufacturing plants. In addition, there are also tractor manufacturing plants in Shanghai. A lot

shìyòng tuōlājī. Yào shuō-  
dao wár, zài Běijīng zuì yǒu  
yìsi.

of people's communes in the  
vicinity of Shanghai use  
tractors. As far as having a  
good time is concerned,  
Peking is the best place.

A: Duì le. Wǒ yídìng yào qù Cháng-  
chéng, Mínglíng, hé Yìhé-  
yuán.

Right. I want to be sure to go  
to the Great Wall, the Ming  
Tombs, and the Summer Palace.

C: Hái yǒu Gùgōng Bówuyuán. Nǐ  
yǒu xìngqu ma?

And then there's the  
Imperial Palace Museum. Does  
that interest you?

A: En. Wǒ yào qù.

Uh-huh, I'd like to go there.

C: Nín duì yòuéryuán, xuéxiào yǒu  
xìngqu ma?

Are you interested in kinder-  
gartens and schools?

A: Wǒ zhèicǐ méiyǒu hěn duō shí-  
jian. Dēng xià yíci zài  
lǎide shíhou zài qù fǎng-  
wèn ba.

I don't have much time this  
trip. Perhaps I'll go visit  
those the next time I come.

C: Nàme wǒ xiǎng nǐ kéyǐ xiān zài  
Běijīng wár sānsìtiān. Yǐhòu  
jiù qù Tiānjīn. Tiānjīn yě  
shì yíge gōngyè chéngshì.  
Zài Tiānjīn cānguān fǎngwèn  
liǎngtiān jiù qù Dōngběi.

In that case I think you could  
first enjoy yourself in  
Peking for three or four days.  
Then go to Tientsin. Tientsin  
is an industrial city, too.  
You can visit in Tientsin for  
two days, and then go to  
Manchuria.

A: Zài Dōngběi qù něixiē chéngshì  
ne?

Which cities will I go to in  
Manchuria?

C: Shěnyáng hé Anshān. Zhèi  
liǎngge dìfang yígòng xūyào  
yíge xīngqī. Ránhòu fēi  
Shànghǎi. Zài Shànghǎi cān-  
guān fǎngwèn sìwǔtiān, zài  
cóng Shànghǎi zuò huǒchē qù  
Sūzhōu, Nánjīng. Měi yíge  
dìfang wár yīliǎngtiān jiù  
xínglè. Ránhòu qù Hángzhōu.

Shenyang and Anshan. These two  
places will take one week  
altogether. Then you'll fly  
to Shanghai. In Shanghai  
you'll visit for four or five  
days, and then take the train  
from Shanghai to Soochow and  
Nanking. If you spend one or  
two days in each place,  
that'll be just about right.  
Then you'll go to Hangchow.

A: Duì. Qù Guǎngzhōu yǐqián, wǒ  
hái xiǎng qù Guǎnlín zhū  
liǎngtiān. Shíjian gòu bu  
gou? Néng bu neng ānpái?

Right. Before I go to Canton,  
I'd also like to spend two  
days in Kueilin. Is there  
enough time? Can it be

C: Wǒ xiǎng kēyi ba.

arranged?

I think so.

A: Wǒ xiǎng zhèige jìhua hěn hǎo.  
Yòu gōngzuò yòu wǎn.

I think this is a good plan.  
can both work and relax.

C: Hǎo. Nǐ juéde héshì, wǒ jiù  
zhèiyang ānpái.

Okay. Since it suits you, I'll  
arrange it that way.

A: Hǎo.

Good.



## Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

C: Nín shì Huàitè Nǚshì ba. Wǒ shì Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshède. Wǒ jiào Mǎ Jiànguó.

You must be Ms. White. I'm from the China Travel Bureau. My name is Mǎ Jiànguó.

A: O, Lǎo Mǎ, nǐ hǎo?

Oh, hello, Lǎo Mǎ.

C: Nín yílùshàng lèi bu lei?

Did you have a tiring trip?

A: Hǎi hǎo, hái hǎo, bú tài lèi.

It was all right; not too tiring.

C: Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde xíngli piào gěi wo, wǒ qù gěi ni qǔ xíngli. Yě qǐng ni bǎ hùzhào gěi wo. Wǒ qù bàn yìxia shǒuxù. Nǐ zài zhèlǐ zuò yìxia, xiūxi xiūxi.

Let me have your baggage ticket, please, and I'll go pick up your luggage. And let me have your passport, too, please. I'll go take care of customs. Have a seat here and rest a bit.

A: Hǎo.

All right.

(Dào le lǚguǎn, Huàitè Nǚshì xiūxile liǎnggeduō xiǎoshí yǐhòu, Mǎ Tóngzhì yòu huídao tāde fángjiānlǐ lái.)

(After they arrive at the hotel and Ms. White has rested for a little more than two hours, Comrade Mǎ comes back to her room.)

C: Huàitè Nǚshì, nín xiūxi hǎo le ma?

Are you all rested, Ms. White?

A: Xiūxi hǎo le.

Yes, I am.

C: Wǒmen tányitán nín de fāngwèn jìhuà, zěnmeyàng? Nín cānguānde zhōngdiǎn shì shénme?

How about discussing the plans for your trip? What do you want to stress on your visit?

A: Hǎo. Wǒ shì xué shèhuìxuéde. Wǒ yào cānguānde shì Zhōngguó shèhuìde gè fāngmian. tèbié shì guānyu fùnǚ fāngmiande qíngkuàng. Wǒ tīngshuō jiéle hūn yǒu hái zide Zhōngguó fùnǚ dàduōshù dōu gōngzuò. Wǒ xiǎng zhīdao tāmen shì zěnmeyàng ānpái tāmen de shíjiān, yòu gōngzuò yòu gāo jiālìde shì.

All right. I study sociology. I'd like to observe various aspects of Chinese society, especially the situation with regard to women. I hear that the majority of Chinese women work after they marry and have children. I'd like to find out how they arrange their time, working and taking care of their homes at the same time.

C: Nín jìhua zài Běijīng zhù jǐ-tiān?

How many days do you plan to spend in Peking?

A: Zài Zhōngguó yíngōng cānguān fāngwèn sìge xīngqī. Wǒ xīwang cānguān yòuéryuán. Quántuōde, rìtuōde, dōu yào kàn. Duì gōngyè hé nóngyè wǒ yě yǒu xīngqū. Wǒ xiǎng cānguān yìliǎngge gōngchǎng hé rénmin gōngshè.

Altogether I'll be visiting in China for four weeks. I hope to visit kindergartens, both full-care and day-care. I'm also interested in industry and agriculture. I'd like to visit one or two factories and people's communes.

C: Hǎo.

All right.

A: O. Wǒ hái xiǎng cānguān xué-xiào hé yīyuàn. Wǒ xīwang nǐ gěi wǒ ānpái fāngwèn jǐge Zhōngguó jiāting, hé tāmen tántan huà.

Oh, I'd also like to visit schools and hospitals. I hope you'll arrange for me to visit a few Chinese families to talk with them.

C: Běijīng yǒu míngde fēngjǐng hǎode dìfang hěn duō, nín yě yào qù wár ba?

There are a lot of famous scenic spots in Peking. You'll want to see them too, won't you?

A: Duì le, duì le. Wǒ zài Měiguó jiù tīngshuō Běijīng yǒu hěn duō yǒu yìsi hé hǎokànde dìfang. Wǒ yídìng děi qù wárwar. Nǐ shuō nǎixie dìfang zuì hǎo ne?

Right. In America I heard that Peking had a lot of interesting and beautiful places. I definitely have to go there. Which places do you think are the best?

C: Wǒ xiǎng nǐ yídìng děi qù cānguān Gùgōng Bówuyuàn, Chángchéng, Shísānlíng, yě jiù shì Mínglíng, hái yǒu Yìhéyuán. Yàoshi yǒu shíjian hái kéyǐ qù kànkan Rénmín Dàhuìtáng.

I think you definitely should go to visit the Imperial Palace Museum, the Great Wall, the Thirteen Tombs, that is, the Ming Tombs, and also the Summer Palace. If you have time you can also go see the National People's Congress Building.

A: Cóng Měiguó dào Zhōngguó lái bù róngyi, nǐ gěi wǒ ānpái cānguānde dìfang, yuè duō yuè hǎo.

It's not easy to come from America to China. The more places you arrange for me to visit, the better.

C: Hǎo. Wǒ shìshì. Xiànzài jiù qù dǎ diànhuà liánxi. Nín yě gāi chī fàn le. Cāntīng jiù zài yīlǒu. Yǒu Xīcān yě yǒu Zhōngcān. Dēng yīhuìr wǒ zài

Okay, I'll try. I'll go contact the people by phone right now. It's about time for you to eat now too. The restaurant is on the first floor. They have

lái zhǎo ni.

Western-style food and  
Chinese food. I'll come  
back to see you in a while.

A: Hǎo, xièxie.

Okay, thank you.

B: Bú kèqi.

Don't mention it.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

C: Zǎo, Bùlái kē Xiānshēng.

Good morning, Mr. Black.

A: Zǎo, Lǐ Tóngzhì.

Good morning, Comrade Li.

C: Xiànzài wǒmen kě bu kéyǐ tán-yítán nǐde cānguān fāngwèn jìhuà? Nǐ zài Zhōngguó yíngōng zhǔ duōshǎo tiān? Nǐ yào cānguānde shì nǐ yì-fāngmian? Chūle Běijīng nǐ hái xiǎng qù nǎxiē dìfang?

May we talk about your sight-seeing plans a bit now? How many days in all are you staying in China? Which aspect is it that you'd like to visit? Which places would you like to go in addition to Peking?

A: Wǒ kéyǐ zài Zhōngguó cānguān fāngwèn sānge xīngqī. Gōngchǎng, xuéxiào, rénmín gōngshè, wǒ dōu yào kàn yìliǎngge, kěshì wǒ shì lái Zhōngguó wǎrde. Wǒ cóng xiǎo jiù tīngshuō Zhōngguó yǒu hěn duō yǒu yǒu yìsi, fēngjǐng yǒu hěn piàoliangde dìfang. Xīwang wǒ dōu néng qù kànkan. Zhōngguó nàme dà, yǒu míngde dìfang nàme duō, wǒ bù néng dōu qù. Xīwang nǐ gěi wǒ ānpáide dìfang yuè duō yuè hǎo. Qù nǎxiē dìfang, zěnme zǒu zuì shǎng shíjiān, nǐ zhīdaode bǐ wǒ qīngchū. Wǒ jiù tīng nǐde ānpái ba.

I'll be able to sightsee and visit in China for three weeks. I'd like to see one or two each of factories, schools, and people's communes, but I've come to China for a pleasure trip. Ever since I was a child I've heard that China had a lot of interesting, scenic places. I wish I could go see them all. China is so big, and there are so many famous places, that I can't go to all of them. I hope you can arrange as many places as possible for me. You know better than I which places to go to and how to go to save the most time. I'll just follow your arrangements.

C: Hǎo. Wǒ xiǎngxiang. Běijīng yǒu hěn duō yǒu yǒu yìsi yòu hǎowǎrde dìfang, xiàng Gùgōng Bówuyuán, Yìhéyuán, Chángchéng, Shísānlǐng, shēmede. Nǐ yídìng děi qù wǎrwar. Zài nánfāng--Shànghǎi, Nánjīng, Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Guìlín, Guǎngzhōu, fēngjǐng dōu hěn hǎo. Zài běifāngde Dàtóng, Tàiyuán, Xī'ān, dōu yǒu lìshǐ gǔjì, bù zhīdào nǐ duì tamen yǒu meiyǒu xìngqu?

All right, let me think. There are a lot of interesting and fun places right in Peking, like the Imperial Palace Museum, the Summer Palace, the Great Wall, the Thirteen Tombs, and so on. You certainly must go see them in the south, the scenery is nice in Shanghai, Nanking, Soochow, Hangchow, Kueilin, and Canton. In the north, there are historic ancient remains at Tat'ung, Taiyuan, and Sian. I

wonder if you'd be interested in them?

- A: Wǒ duì lìshǐ gǔjī hěn yǒu xìngqù. A: I'm very interested in historic remains.
- C: Wǒ xiǎng nǐ zài Běijīng cānguān fāngwèn sānsìtiān. Yǐhòu zuò huǒchē qù Dātóng, Tàiyuán. Zài zhèi liǎngge dìfang wǎr sānsìtiān jiù gòule. Ránhòu cóng Tàiyuán zuò huǒchē qù Xī'ān. Xī'ān cóngqián jiào Cháng'ān, shì yige gǔdū. Yǒu hěn duō lìshǐ gǔjī. C: I think you should sightsee in Peking for three or four days. Then take the train to Tat'ung and T'aiyüan. Three or four days would be enough to enjoy yourself in these two places. Then take the train from Taiyüan to Sian. Sian used to be called Ch'ang'an. It's an ancient capital. It has a lot of historical remains.
- A: Zhèi shíhou Xī'ān tiānqi zěnmeyàng? A: How's the weather in Sian at this time?
- C: Xī'ān bǐ zhèli nuǎnhuo yìdiǎr. Cóng Xī'ān zhí fēi Nánjīng. Nánjīngde Zhōngshānlíng jiù shì Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānshengde língmù, jiànzhude hěn hǎo. Yídìng děi qù cānguān. Wúxī, Sūzhōu, lí Nánjīng dōu hěn jìn. Nǐ yào bu yào qù? C: Sian is a little warmer than here. From Sian you fly direct to Nanking. The 'Chungshan Tomb' in Nanking is Dr. Sun Yat-sen's tomb. It's very well constructed. You must go visit it. Wusih and Soochow are both near Nanking. Do you want to go there?
- A: Wúxī, Sūzhōu hěn hǎo wǎr ma? A: Are Wusih and Soochow nice?
- C: Wúxīde Tàihú bǐ Hángzhōude Xīhú dàde duō, yě hěn měi. Zài Sūzhōu zhù liǎngtiān kànkan lìshǐ gǔjī, jiù dào Shànghǎi. Shànghǎi shì yíge gōngyè chéngshì, kéyǐ zài nàr cānguān gōngchǎng hé rénmín gōngshè. C: The T'ai Lake in Wusih is much larger than West Lake in Hangchow, and it's also beautiful. Stay in Soochow two days to see the historic remains, and then go to Shanghai. Shanghai is an industrial city, so you can visit factories and people's communes there.
- A: Zài Shànghǎi zhù jǐtiān ne? A: How many days do I spend in Shanghai?
- C: Zài Shànghǎi zhù sāntiān jiù xíng. C: If you stay in Shanghai three days that would be enough.
- A: Cóng Shànghǎi dào Hángzhōu zuò huǒchē děi duōshao shíhou? A: How long does it take to get from Shanghai to Hangchow by train?

C: Cóng Shànghǎi dào Hángzhōu zuò huǒchē wǔge xiǎoshí jiù dào-le. Hángzhōu bú yòng wǒ jièshào le. Nǐ yídìng tīngshuōle nèi shi yíge piàoliangjǐlede dìfang. Hángzhōu yě shi yíge gǔdū. Cóng Hángzhōu zuò fēijī dào Guǐlín. Guǐlín shānshuǐ měide xiàng huà yíyàng. Nǐ yídìng huì xǐhuānde. Cóng Guǐlín zuò fēijī qù Guǎngzhōu. Zài Guǎngzhōu wán liǎngsāntiān. Nǐ kàn zhèige jìhuà zěnmeyàng?

A: Èn. Zhèige jìhuà tài hǎole. Jiù zhènme bàn ba. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ gēn Lǚxíngshè liánxi. Xièxie nǐ.

C: Bú xiè.

C: By train from Shanghai to Hangchow you arrive in five hours. I don't need to recommend Hangchow. You must have heard that it's an extremely beautiful place. Hangchow is also an ancient capital. You'll take a plane from Hangchow to Kueilin. The scenery in Kueilin is as beautiful as a painting. I'm sure you'll like it. From Kueilin you take a plane to Canton. You relax in Canton for two or three days. How does that plan sound to you?

A: Uh-huh. It's a great plan. That's the way we'll do it. Would you please contact the Travel Bureau about this for me? (liánxi is originally transitive, the object is the matter in question-here the object is understood) Thank you.

C: Not at all.

Unit 2, Reference List

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A: Zhèige yòuéryuán shì<br>něinián <u>chénglìde</u> ?  | What year was this<br>kindergarten estab-<br>lished?   |
| B: Shì Yījiūsìjiūnián<br>chénglìde.   | It was established in<br>1949.   |
| 2. A: Tāmende fùmǔ dōu shì<br><u>gānbù</u> ma?  | Are their parents all<br>cadre members?  |
| B: Bù dōu shì. Tāmende fùmǔ,<br>yǒude shì <u>gōngrén</u> ,<br>yǒude shì <u>Jiěfāngjūn</u> ,<br>yě yǒude shì <u>gānbù</u> .  | Not all. Some of their parents<br>are workers, some are<br>members of the Liberation<br>Army, and some are cadre<br>members.                 |
| 3. A: Tāmen dōu shì<br><u>shuāngzhīgōng</u> ma?   | Are they all working<br>couples?   |
| B: Shì.   | Yes.   |
| 4. A: <u>Jiāzhǎng</u> wèishénme yào<br>bǎ hái'zi sòngdao quántuō<br>yòuéryuán?  | Why do the parents want<br>to send their children<br>to a full-care kindergarten?  |
| B: Jiāzhǎng yǒude shíhou<br>yào qù wàidì <u>chūchāi</u> .   | Sometimes the parents have to<br>go out of town on<br>business.  |
| 5. B: Tāmen dōu hěn máng,<br>bù néng <u>zhàogu</u> hái'zi<br>suóyì ràng yòuéryuán<br><u>bāngzhu</u> tāmen zhàogu<br>hái'zi. | They are all very busy,<br>and can't look after<br>the children, so they<br>have the kindergarten<br>help them take care of<br>the children. |

6. A: Měibān měitiān dōu shàng  
jǐjié kè?  
B: Xiǎobān shàng yìjié kè.  
Zhōngbān hé dàbān dōu  
shàng liǎngjié kè.
7. B: Qítāde shíjiān dōu shì  
zuò yóuxi.
8. A: Chūle yóuxi yǐwài, hái  
zuò shénme?  
B: Tāmen jiàoyù háizimen  
cóng xiǎo jiù yào ài  
láodòng, ài zǔguó,  
ài Gōngchǎndǎng.
9. A: Háizi líkāi fùmǔ, zhùzài  
yòuéryuánli, xiǎng bu  
xiǎng jiā?  
A: Fùmǔqīn yě fāngxīn ma?  
B: Háizimen gāng lái de shíhòu  
dāngrán yǒu diǎn xiǎng  
jiā, kěshì hěn kuài jiù  
huì xíguàn le.
10. A: Háizimen chīde zěnmeyàng?  
B: Chūle sāndùn fàn yǐwài,  
háizi wúshuǐ yì-  
hòu hái chī yíci  
diǎnxīn.
11. A: Zhèige yòuéryuán yǒu  
jǐjiān bìngfáng?  
B: Yǒu sānjiān bìngfáng.
12. A: Háizi shēng bìngle  
zěnmè bān?  
B: Háizi shēng bìngle,  
dàifu gěi tāmen  
zhìliáo.
- How many sessions does each  
class have every day?  
The younger class has one  
session. The middle and  
older classes both have  
two sessions.  
All the other time is for  
playing.  
Besides play what else  
do they do?  
They educate the children from  
the time they are small to  
love labor, love the fatherland,  
and love the Communist Party.  
When the children leave their  
parents and live in the kinder-  
garten, do they get homesick?  
And are the parents' minds at ease?  
When the children first arrive,  
they are of course a little  
homesick, but they soon become  
accustomed to it.  
How do the children eat?  
Besides their three meals, after  
the afternoon nap the children  
also eat a snack.  
How many infirmary rooms does  
this kindergarten have?  
There are three infirmary rooms.  
What do you do when the children  
get sick?  
When the children get sick,  
the doctor treats them.



13. B: Guānyu yòuéryuánde  
qíngkuàng, wǒ  
jiù jièshào dào  
zhèlǐ.

As for the situation in  
the kindergarten, I **will**  
end my introduction here.

B: Rúguo nǐmen yǒu shenme  
wèntí, huānyíng nǐmen  
tíchulai.

If you have any questions,  
you are welcome to  
bring them up.

14. A: Xièxie nǐmende zhāodài.

Thank you for your  
hospitality.

- (Not on the tape) -

15. zhígōng

staff and workers

16. dǎng

party (political)

17. bāngmáng

to help

18. Jiěfàng

Liberation

Vocabulary

ài	to love
-bān	class (of students)
bāngmáng	to help, to aid
bāngzhu	to help, to aid; aid
bìngfáng	infirmary room
chénglì	to establish
chūchāi	to be sent out of town on business
dǎng	party (political)
dāngrán	naturally, of course
-dun	(counter for a meal)
fāngxīn	to put one's mind at ease, to be unworried
gānbù	cadre, cadre member
Gōngchǎngdǎng	Communist Party
gōngrén	worker
guānyu	regarding, concerning, about, as for
jiàoyu	to educate
jiāzhǎng	parent
-jié	session, time(counter for classes)
Jiěfàngjūn	Liberation Army
shuāngzhīgōng	working couple
tíchulai	to bring up, to set forth
wǔshuì	afternoon nap
xiǎng jiā	to be homesick
xíguàn	to get used to, to become accustomed to, a habit

yóuxi

to play, to play games;  
recreation, game, play

zhāodài

zhāogu

zhīgōng

hospitality

to look after

staff and workers; employee  
(staff member or worker)

zhīliáo

zǔguó

to treat, to cure

ancestral homeland,  
fatherland

Unit 2, Reference Notes

1. A: Zhèige yòuéryuán shì  
nèinián chénglìde?  
What year was this  
kindergarten estab-  
lished?
- B: Shì Yījiǔsìjiǔnián  
chénglìde.  
It was established in  
1949.

Notes on No. 1

chénglì: 'To establish', 'to set up'

Měiguó shì Yīqīqīliùnián  
chénglìde.

The United States was  
established in 1776.

...shì 1949 chénglìde: Notice that the shì...de construction is used here, since the speaker is focusing on when the kindergarten was set up, not simply that it was set up.

2. A: Tāmende fùmǔ dōu  
shì gānbù ma?  
Are their parents all  
cadre members?
- B: Bù dōu shì. Tāmende fùmǔ  
yǒude shì gōngrén,  
yǒude shì Jiěfàngjūn,  
yě yǒude shì gānbù.  
Not all. Some of their parents  
are workers, some are  
members of the  
Liberation Army, and  
some are cadre members.

Notes on No. 2

gānbù: 'cadre' For the most part cadre members are government bureau workers, although you find cadre members in other areas as well. In factories, cadre members are the clerks and managers in the office while the gōngrén are the workers in the plant. In communes, cadre members may be found in the managing of the unit.

...yě yǒude shì gānbù: You have usually seen the adverb yě, 'also' coming before the verb, but notice that here it starts off the last clause of the sentence.

Jiěfàngjūn: The army of the People's Republic of China is the People's Liberation Army, Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn. Jiěfàng is the word for 'liberation'.

3. A: Tāmen dōu shì  
shuāngzhīgōng ma? Are they all working  
couples?

B: Shì. Yes.

Note on No. 3

shuāngzhīgōng: 'working couple' More literally, this is  
'a pair (shuāng) of 'staff members or workers' (zhīgōng).

4. A: Jiāzhǎng wèishénme yào  
bǎ háizi sòngdao  
quántuō yòuéryuán? Why do the parents want  
to send their children  
to a full-care kinder-  
garten?

B: Jiāzhǎng yǒude shíhou  
yào qù wàidì chūchāi. Sometimes the parents  
have to go out of town  
on business.

Notes on No. 4

jiāzhǎng: 'parent, mother or father' Literally this means  
'the head of the household', but it has been expanded to mean 'parent,  
mother and/or father'.

chūchāi: 'to send out on duty, to go away on official  
business' Since the verb chūchāi includes the idea of going AWAY  
to work, the use of the phrase qù wàidì, 'go to places out of town' is  
for emphasis.

B: Tāmen dōu hěn máng,  
bù néng zhàogu háizi,  
suǒyǐ ràng yòuéryuán  
bāngzhu tamen zhàogu  
háizi. They are all very busy  
and can't look after  
the children, so they  
have the kindergarten  
help them take care  
of the children.

Note on No. 5

ràng yòuéryuán bāngzhu tamen...: The prepositional verb ràng  
means 'to let, to allow, to have'. You may have seen ràng in the Personal  
Welfare Module, Unit 5. (Ràng wo kànkàn nǐde hùzhào. 'let me see  
your passport'.) Here are some other examples.

Tā bú ràng wo qù. He won't allow me to go.

Zhèijiàn shì, nǐ bù  
néng ràng ta zuǒ. You can't let him handle  
this matter.

6. A: Měibān měitiān dōu shàng  
jǐjié kè?

How many sessions does  
each class have every day?

B: Xiǎobān shàng yìjié kè.  
Zhōngbān hé dàbān  
dōu shàng liǎngjié kè.

The younger class has one  
session. The middle and  
older classes both have  
two sessions.

#### Notes on No. 6

-bān: This is the counter for a class in school when you are referring to the students in the class.

Woměn zhèi yìbān yǒu  
sānshidūoge xuésheng.

Our class has more than  
30 students.

-jié: This is the counter for a session of a class.

7. B: Qítāde shíjian dōu  
shí zuò yóuxi.

All the other time is  
for playing.

#### Note on No. 7

yóuxi: This is the verb 'to play' in the sense of 'play games'. It can also be the noun 'game' or 'recreation'.

8. A: Chúle yóuxi yǐwài, hái  
zuò shénme?

Besides play what else  
do they do?

B: Tāmen jiàoyu hái zìmen  
cóng xiǎo jiù yào ài  
lǎodòng, ài zǔguó,  
ài Gòngchǎndǎng.

They educate the children  
the time they are small  
to love labor, love the  
fatherland, and love the  
Communist Party.

#### Notes on No. 8

chúle...yǐwài: This pattern is used to express the idea 'except for, besides..., or aside from...'. The second part, yǐwài, is sometimes omitted. (See also Unit 6, Reference Note 10.)

Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang  
chúle chūqu kàn  
diànyǐng, wǒ méiyǒu  
biéde shénme jīhuà.

Except for going to a  
movie, I really have  
no other plans for  
this evening.

Wǒ chúle ta yǐwài,  
méiyǒu biéde hǎo  
péngyou le.

Except for him, I have  
no other close friends  
anymore.

Gōngchǎngdǎng: 'Communist Party' You may also hear references made only to dǎng, 'party'.

9. A: Házǐ líkāi fùmǔ, zhùzài yòuéryuánli, xiǎng bu xiàng jiā?  
When the children leave their parents and live in the kindergarten, do they get homesick?
- A: Fùmǔqīn yě fàngxīn ma?  
And are the parents' minds at ease?
- B: Házǐzìmen gāng lái de shíhòu dāngrán yǒu diǎr xiǎng jiā, kěshì hěn kuài jiù huì xíguàn le.  
When the children first arrive, they are of course a little homesick, but they soon become accustomed to it.

Notes on No. 9

xiǎng jiā: 'To be homesick, more literally 'to think of home'

fàngxīn: 'To be unworried, to put one's mind at ease'

Notice that the first definition describes a state, while the second describes an action. The verb fàngxīn acts in both ways.

Tā chūqule, hái méiyǒu huílai. Wǒ hěn bu fàngxīn.

He's gone out and he's not back yet! I'm very worried.

Nǐ bǎ dōngxī gěi wǒ, nǐ fàngxīn bu fàngxīn?

If you give me the things, will you be worried?

Nǐ fàngxīn ba!

Put your mind at ease!  
(Don't worry!)

The Chinese sometimes refer to the heart (xīn) when in English we would refer to the mind. The verb fàngxīn (literally, 'to release the heart') is one example. Here's another:

Nǐ xīnli yǒu shénme shì?

What's on your mind?

Nǐ xīnli xiǎng shénme?

What are you thinking?

dāngrán: 'of course, naturally' This is an adverb, and therefore occurs before the verb.

xíguàn: 'to get used to, to become accustomed to', also  
'a habit'

Nǐ dào le Běijīng yǐjīng  
liǎngge yuè le, nǐ xíguàn  
bu xíguàn chī Zhōngguó  
fàn le?

You've been in Peking  
for two months now.  
Are you accustomed to  
eating Chinese food yet?

Tā xiǎng xué xī Zhōngguó de  
xíguàn.

He would like to learn  
Chinese customs.

10. A: Háizimen chī de zěnmeyàng?

How do the children eat?

B: Chū le sān dūn fàn yǐ wài,  
háizi xiǎowu wǔchuí  
yǐhòu hái chī yí cì  
diǎnxīn.

Besides their three meals,  
after the afternoon nap  
the children also eat  
a snack.

Notes on No. 10

...chī de zěnmeyàng?: You'll remember that the way to talk  
about how some action is done is to add the marker -de to the verb.  
Here instead of finding a word describing the manner of action  
following the verb, you have the question word zěnmeyàng, 'how'.

Tā shuō Rìwén, shuō de  
zěnmeyàng?

How does he speak  
Japanese?

Tā shuō de hěn hǎo.

He speaks very well.

-dùn: This is the counter for food in meals.

11. A: Zhèige yòuéryuán yǒu  
jǐjiān bìngfáng?

How many infirmary rooms  
does this kindergarten  
have?

B: Yǒu sānjiān bìngfáng.

There are three infirmary  
rooms.

12. A: Háizi shēng bìng le  
zěnmé bàn?

What do you do when the  
children get sick?

B: Háizi shēng bìng le  
dàifu gěi tamen  
zhìliáo.

When the children get  
sick, the doctor  
treats them.



Notes on No. 12.

...dàifu gěi tamen zhìliáo: 'the doctor treats them' Notice that the prepositional verb gěi is used here. A more literal translation might be 'the doctor treats it for them.' For the verb zhìliáo, the person treated is the indirect object and is so indicated by the prepositional verb gěi. The sickness treated would be the direct object and would follow the verb.

Dàifu gěi tamen zhìliáo  
xiè dù.

The doctor treated the  
diarrhea for them.

13. B: Guānyu yòuéryuánde  
qíngkuàng, wǒ  
jiù jièshào dào  
zhèlǐ.

As for the situation in  
the kindergarten, I will  
end my introduction here.

B: Rúguo nǐmen yǒu shenme  
wèntí, huānyíng  
nimen tíchulai.

If you have any questions,  
you are welcome to  
bring them up.

Notes on No. 13.

guānyu: 'As for, about' Guānyu can occur in two places in the sentence. One is at the beginning of the sentence, the other is after the main verb. At the front of the sentence guānyu introduces the topic which follows. It can be translated as 'as for' or 'about'. When guānyu leads off a phrase after the verb, it is part of a modifying phrase with the marker de.

Guānyu Měiguode gōngchǎng,  
wǒ zhīdaode bù duō.

As for American factories,  
I don't know very much.

Xièxie nǐ gàosu wǒ zhènme  
duō guānyu Běihǎi  
Yòuéryuánde qíngkuàng.

Thank you for telling me  
so much about the situation  
in the Peihai kindergarten.

Guānyu jiàoyu fāngmiànde  
qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng?

How is the situation re-  
garding the educational  
side of things?

tíchulai: 'to bring up (a question, an opinion), to mention'  
The verb tí is 'to lift or to raise'.

15. A: Xièxie nǐmende zhāodài.

Thank you for your  
hospitality.

## Unit 2, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

(This is a talk delivered by a representative of the kindergarten to a group of foreign visitors.)

Wǒmen zhèige yòuéryuán shì  
Yíjiùsìjiùnián chénglǐde, shì quán-  
tuō yòuéryuán. Házimen Xīngqīyī  
zǎoshàng lái, Xīngqīliù xiàwǔ huí-  
jiā. Xiànzài yìgòng yǒu sān-  
bǎi ge háizi.

Házimende fùqin, mǔqin, yǒu-  
de shì gōngrén, yǒude shì Jiěfàng-  
jūn, yǒude shì lǎoshī, yě yǒude shì  
gànbù. Tāmen dōu shì shuāngzhīgōng.

Jiāzhāngmen yǒude shíhou wǎn-  
shàng yào kāi huì, xuéxi, yǒude  
shíhou hái yào qù wàidì chūchāi.  
Tāmen dōu hěn máng, bù néng zhàogu  
háizi, suǒyǐ bǎ háizi sòngdao quán-  
tuō yòuéryuán lái, ràng yòuéryuán  
bāngzhu tāmen zhàogu háizi.

Wǒmen zhèige yòuéryuán yìgòng  
yǒu shíge bān, xiǎobān cóng sānsuì  
dào sìsuì, zhōngbān cóng sìsuì dào  
wǔsuì, dàbān cóng wǔsuì dào liùsuì.  
Wǒmen yìgòng yǒu sìge xiǎobān, sānge  
zhōngbān, sānge dàbān.

Xiǎobān měitiān shàng yìjié kè,  
měijié shíwǔfēn zhōng. Zhōngbān měi-  
tiān shàng liǎngjié kè, měijié èrshí-  
fēn zhōng. Dàbān měitiān shàng liǎng-  
jié kè, měijié sānshífēn zhōng.

Qítāde shíjiān dōu shì zuò yóuxi.  
Chúle shàng kè, yóuxi yǐwài, wǒmen  
hái jiàoyu háizimen cóng xiǎo jiù  
yào ài lǎodòng, ài zǔguó, ài  
Gōngchǎndǎng.

This kindergarten was estab-  
lished in 1949. It is a full-care kind-  
ergarten. The children come on Mon-  
day morning and go home on Saturday  
afternoon. Altogether now there  
are three hundred children.

Some of the children's parents  
are workers, some are members of the  
Liberation Army, some are teachers  
and some are cadres. All are working  
couples.

Sometimes in the evenings the  
parents go to meetings or study, at  
times they go out of town on business.  
They are all very busy and can't  
stay after the children, so they bring  
them to a full-care kindergarten and  
the kindergarten help them take care  
of the children.

Our kindergarten altogether has  
ten classes. The younger class has  
three to four years old, the middle  
class is from four to five years old,  
the older class is from five to six  
years old. Altogether we have five  
younger classes, three middle classes  
and three older classes.

Every day the younger class has  
one class, each class lasting fifteen  
minutes. Every day the middle class  
has two classes, each class lasting  
twenty minutes. Every day the older  
classes have two classes, each lasting  
thirty minutes.

All the other time is for play.  
In addition to class and play, we  
educate the children from the time they  
are small to love labor, love their  
fatherland, and love the Communist  
Party.

(After the presentation, the representative entertains questions from the visitors.)

F: Guānyu yòuéryuándē qíngkuàng  
wǒ jiù jiēshào dào zhèlǐ.  
Rúguo nǐmen yǒu shénme  
wèntí, huānyíng nǐmen  
tíchulai. Wǒmen yìqǐ  
tántan.

As for the situation in  
the kindergarten, I'll  
conclude my introductory  
remarks here. If you  
have any questions,  
you are welcome to  
bring them up. We  
can discuss them together.

M: Nà hǎojié. Wǒ hěn xiǎng  
zhīdao yàoshi háizi  
bǐngle zěnmé bàn?

That's great. I would very  
much like to know what  
is done if a child  
becomes sick.

F: Wǒmen yòuéryuán yǒu liǎngge  
dàifu, hái yǒu sānjiān  
bǐngfáng. Háizi bǐngle,  
dàifu jiù gěi tamen zhīliáo.  
Rúguo xūyào, jiù sòngdao  
bǐngfáng qù.

Our kindergarten has two  
doctors, and three  
infirmary rooms. When  
the children get sick,  
the doctor treats them.  
If necessary, they are  
sent to the infirmary.

M: Nǐmen zhèrde háizi dōu hái  
xiǎo. Tāmen líkāi fùmǔ,  
zhùzai yòuéryuánlǐ, xiǎng  
bu xiǎng jiā? Fùmǔqīn yě  
fàngxīn ma?

The children here are all  
still young. When they  
leave their parents and  
live in the kindergarten,  
do they get homesick? And  
are the parents' minds  
at ease?

F: Háizimen gāng lái de shíhòu  
dāngrán yǒu diǎr xiǎng jiā,  
kěshì hěn kuài jiù huì  
xíguàn le. Fùmǔqīn zhīdao  
yòuéryuán bǐ jiālǐ zhào-  
gùde gèng hǎo. Tāmen yě jiù  
fàngxīn le.

When the children first  
arrive, of course they get a  
little homesick. But  
they soon become  
accustomed to it. The parents  
know that the kindergarten  
looks after the children  
even better than at home.  
So they don't worry.

M: Háizimen yìtiān chī jǐcì?

How many times a day do  
the children eat?

- F: Chī sìcì. Chūle sāndùn fàn  
yīwài. wǔshuǐ yǐhòu  
hái chī yíci diǎnxīn.  
Four times. In addition to  
three meals, they eat  
a snack in the afternoon  
after their nap.
- M: Bā yíge háizi sòngdao nǐmen  
yòuéryuán lái, yíge yuè  
děi duōshǎo qián?  
How much does it cost a  
month to send a child  
to your kindergarten?
- F: Èrshíjǐkuài qián.  
Twenty-some dollars.
- M: Háizimende jiā dōu zài zhèr  
fùjìn ma?  
Are the children's homes  
all in this area?
- F: Bú shì. Tāmende jiā yǒude  
zài fùjìn, yǒude zài hěn  
yuǎnde dìfang.  
No. Some of their homes are  
in the area, some are  
very far away.
- M: Hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yǐjīng  
wènde hěn duō le.  
Xièxie nǐmende  
zhāodài.  
Good. I think I've already  
asked a lot. Thank  
you for your hospitality.

Unit 2, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

This exercise contains a conversation in which a Peking kindergarten director answers an American visitor's questions about the situation in the kindergarten.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you will probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 48 as you listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

tóuyícì	the first time
kū	to cry
dànshi	but, however
bàba	dad, papa
yíngyǎng	nourishment, nutrition
biǎoyǎn	to give a performance

Exercise 3

In this exercise you will hear a conversation in which two university students, one Chinese and one foreign, discuss the situation in a Peking kindergarten.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, turn to page 49 and answer the questions.

Here are the new vocabulary items you will need to understand this conversation:

Běijīngshì	Municipality of Peking
jìsù yòu'éryuán	boarding kindergarten
guò jítǐ shēnghuò	to live a communal life
shòu jítǐ jiàoyù	to receive a communal education
bāngzhu	to help (required)
zhěnglǐ	to straighten up, to put in order
qǐnshì (or qǐnshǐ)	bedroom
jiāo huār	to water flowers
gùshi	story
chàng gē	to sing
tiàowǔ	to dance

Note: Towards the end of this conversation you will hear the phrase ... zài lǎoshī bāngzhu xià ... 'with the help of the teacher'. In this phrase the English 'with' or 'under' is expressed in two parts in the Chinese sentence, zài ... xià. You've seen words like xià, shàng, and lǐ used after nouns, as in Zài fānguǎnrli, 'In the restaurant'. Here the locational ending xià comes at the end of a phrase, instead of after a noun.

#### Exercise 4

In this exercise you will again hear a conversation between a Chinese student and a foreign student in which they talk about a Peking kindergarten.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen to it again. On the second time through, answer the questions which are found on page 49.

For this exercise you will need the following new vocabulary item:

liúxuésheng	a student studying abroad
-------------	---------------------------

#### Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the age range of the children in the kindergarten?
2. Why do the children like to be in the kindergarten?

3. How do the parents of the children feel about their being in the kindergarten?
4. Is there more than one class in the kindergarten? If so, what are they?
5. What happens when a child gets sick in the kindergarten?
6. Do parents pay for kindergarten care? If so, how much?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation found on page 51. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. When was the kindergarten established?
2. Since it is a full-care kindergarten, when do the children arrive and when do they leave?
3. Give some reasons why the parents send their children to a boarding kindergarten.
4. Do the children attend kindergarten classes? If so, how many classes do they attend?
5. Besides attending classes, what else do the children do in the kindergarten?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation on page 53. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

### Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What place did the speaker visit?
2. How many classes are there altogether in the kindergarten and what are the ages of the children in these classes?
3. What sort of work do the parents of the children do?

4. How often do the children eat?
5. When the visitor went he got a chance to see the children eating lunch. What were they eating?
6. Do the children also have snacks? If so, what do they eat then?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation on page 54 . You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.



Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

C: Guānyu wōmen yòuéryuán de qīngkuàng wǒ jiù jièshào dào zhèlǐ. Yàoshi nǐmen yǒu shenme wèntí, huānyíng nǐmen tíchulai, wōmen yìqǐ suǐbiān tántan.

That's all I'll introduce about the situation in our kindergarten. If you have any questions, feel free to bring them up and we'll chat about them together.

A: Xièxie nǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào guānyu nǐmen yòuéryuán de qīngkuàng. Nǐ gāosule wǒmen hěn duō wǒmen yǐqián bù zhīdào de shìqing, dōu hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ yǒu jǐge xiǎo wèntí xiǎng wèn nǐ.

Thank you for giving us a presentation of the situation in your kindergarten. You've told us a lot of things we didn't know before, and they're all very interesting. I have a few short questions I'd like to ask you.

C: Hǎo. Nǐ qǐngwèn ba, shenme wèntí dōu huānyíng.

All right. Please ask, we welcome any questions.

A: Zhèlǐ de hái zi shì cóng sì suì dào liù suì, hái zimen dōu hái hěn xiǎo. Tāmen zhù zài yòuéryuán lǐ, xiǎng bu xiǎng jiā? Bàba māma xiǎng bu xiǎng hái zi?

The children here are from four to six years old, so they're still all quite young. Do they get homesick staying in the kindergarten? Do the parents miss their children?

C: Hái zi gāng lái de shíhou huì yǒu diǎn xiǎng jiā, kěshì zài yòuéryuán lǐ yǒu bié de hái zi yìqǐ wán, bǐ jiā lǐ rè nao. Hái zimen hěn kuài jiù xí guān le. Fù mǔ ne, yīnwei hái zi shì tóu yí cì lí kai tāmen, suǒ yǐ yǒu shíhou hái zi kǔ, māma yě huì kǔ. Dān shì bàba māma zhīdao zài yòuéryuán lǐ wǒmen zhāo gu hái zi bǐ jiā lǐ zhāo gude gèng hǎo. Tāmen yě jiù fàng xīn le. Fù mǔ yǒu gōng fu yě kě yǐ lái kàn hái zi.

When the children have just arrived they will get a bit homesick, but in the kindergarten there are other children to play with, so it's livelier than at home. The children get used to it very soon. As for the parents, since their children are leaving them for the first time, sometimes when a child cries the mother will cry too. But the mother and father know that at the kindergarten we take even better care of the children than their family does, so they don't worry. When the parents have time they can come to see their children, too.

A: Měi yì bān yǒu duō shǎo ge hái zi?

How many children are there in each class?

C: Xiǎn zài xiǎo bān yǒu èr shí èr ge

The younger class has twenty-two

- háizi. Zhōngbān yǒu èrshiliùge. Dàbān yǒu sānshiduōge.
- children now. The middle class has twenty-six. The older class has over thirty.
- A: Háizimen yìtiān chī jǐdùn?
- How many meals do the children eat a day?
- C: Sāndùn. Chūle sāndùn fān yīwài wúshuǐ yǐhòu hái chī yíci diǎnxīn. Wǒmen duì háizimende yíngyǎng hěn zhūyì.
- Three. Besides the three meals they also have a snack after their afternoon nap. We pay a great deal of attention to the children's nutrition.
- A: Háizi shēng bìngle zěnme bàn?
- What do you do when a child gets sick?
- C: Wǒmen yòuéryuán méiyǒu dàifu, yǒu yíge hùshi, liǎngjiān bìngfáng. Rúguo háizi bìngle, hùshi dài ta dào fùjīnde yīyuàn qu kàn bìng. Huí yòuéryuán yǐhòu, jiù zhùzài bìngfánglǐ. Yǒu hùshi zhàogu ta.
- Our kindergarten doesn't have a doctor, but there's a nurse and there are two infirmary rooms. If a child gets sick, the nurse takes him to the hospital nearby to see a doctor. After he comes back to the kindergarten he stays in an infirmary. There is a nurse to take care of him.
- A: Yíge háizi měige yuè jiāzhǎng dēi gěi yòuéryuán duōshao qián?
- How much money do the parents have to give the kindergarten per month for one child?
- C: Èrshísì kuài qián.
- Twenty-four dollars.
- A: Hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ méiyǒu shenme zài yào wènde le.
- Okay, I don't think I have anything else to ask.
- C: Nàme xiànzài qǐng nimen lái kànkan háizimen biǎoyǎn.
- In that case, would you please come see the children perform now?

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

- A: Zuótiān shàngwǔ wǒmen qù cānguān Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎnde shìhou, nǐmen qù nǎr le?  
Where did you go yesterday morning while we went to visit the Peking Exhibition Hall?
- B: Wǒmen cānguān yòuéryuán qu le.  
We visited a kindergarten.
- A: Nǐ qù cānguānde shì něige yòuéryuán?  
Which kindergarten was it that you went to see?
- B: Běijīngshì Dìsān Yòuéryuán.  
Peking Municipal Kindergarten Number Three.
- A: Zhèige yòuéryuán shì něinián chénglǐde?  
What year was the kindergarten established?
- B: Yījiǔsìjiǔ. Shì Jiěfàng nèinián chénglǐde.  
1949. It was established the year of Liberation.
- A: Shì bu shì quán tuō yòuéryuán?  
Is it a full-care kindergarten?
- B: Shìde. Házìmen Xīngqīrì xiàwǔ huòshì Xīngqīyī zǎoshang lái yòuéryuán. Xīngqīliù xiàwǔ huí jiā.  
Yes. The children come to the kindergarten Sunday afternoon or Monday morning. They go home Saturday afternoon.
- A: Fùmǔ wèishénme bǎ háizi sòngdao jìsù yòuéryuán? Házìmen bù xiǎng jiā ma?  
Why do the parents send their children to a boarding kindergarten? Don't the children get homesick?
- B: Yīnwèi háizimende fùmǔqīn dōu shì shuāngzhīgōng, wǎnshang yǒude shíhou yào kāi huì, xuéxí; yǒude shíhou hái yào qù wàidì chūchāi. Tāmen dōu hěn máng, bù néng zhàogu háizi, suǒyǐ yòuéryuán gěi tamen zhàogu háizi. Házì cǒng xiǎo jiù guò jítǐ shēnghuò shòu jítǐ jiàoyù.  
Because the children's parents are all working couples, and sometimes they have to attend meetings or study in the evening; sometimes they are sent out of town on business, too. They're all very busy and can't take care of their children, so the kindergarten takes care of the children for them. The children live a communal life and received a communal education from the time they are little.
- A: Házìmen zài yòuéryuán shàng kè ma?  
Do the children attend classes in the kindergarten?
- B: Shàng kè.  
Yes, they do.

- A: Yìtiān shàng jǐjié kè? How many classes do they attend a day?
- B: Gèbān bù yíyàng. Xiǎobān měitiān shàng yìjié kè. Měi jié shíwǔfēn zhōng. Zhōngbān měitiān shàng liǎngjié kè měi jié èrshífēn zhōng. Dàbān měitiān shàng liǎngjié kè. Měi jié sānshífēn zhōng. Each class is different. The younger class has one session a day. Each session is fifteen minutes. The middle class has two sessions a day, and each session is twenty minutes. The older class attends two sessions a day, and each session is thirty minutes.
- A: Qítāde shíjian háizimen zuò shénme? What do the children do the rest of the time?
- B: Qítāde shíjian dōu shì zuò yóuxi. Chūle shàng kè, yóuxi yǐwài, yòuéryuán hái jiàoyu háizimen cóng xiǎo jiù ài láodòng. Dàbānde háizi zài lǎoshī bāngzhu xià zhēngliqǐnshì, jiāo huār, shénmede. Lǎoshī hái chāngcháng gěi háizimen jiǎng gùshi, jiāo tamen chàng gē, tiàowǔ. Jiàoyu tamen ài zūguó, ài Gōngchāndǎng. All the rest of the time is for playing. Besides attending classes and playing, the kindergarten also educates the children from the time they are small to love labor. The children in the older class straighten up their bedrooms, water the flowers, and so forth, with the help of their teacher. The teacher also often tells the children stories, teaches them to sing and dance, and educates them to love their homeland and the Communist Party.
- A: En, hěn yǒu yìsi. Hm, that's interesting.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

- A: Zuótiān xiàwǔ wǒ lái zhǎo nǐ, nǐ bú zài. Nǐ dào nǎr qù le? Yesterday I came to visit you but you were out. Where did you go?
- B: Wǒ hé jǐge wàiguó liúxuésheng cānguān yíge yòuéryuán, hěn yǒu yìsi. I went with some foreign students studying here to visit a kindergarten. It was very interesting.
- A: Nèige yòuéryuán shì quán tuō yòuéryuán háishi rì tuō yòuéryuán? Was it a full-care kindergarten or a day-care kindergarten?
- B: Shi quán tuō yòuéryuán. Háizimen dōu zhùzai nar. It was a full-care one. The children all live there.

A: Tāmen nàr yǒu duōshao hái-  
zi?  
Cóng jǐsuì dào jǐsuì?

How many children do they have  
there? What range are their  
ages?

B: Házimen cóng sānsuì dào liù-  
suì. Yígòng yǒu liùbān,  
yībān sìshíduōge hái-  
zi.

The children are from three to six  
years old. Altogether there  
are six classes, and each class  
has over forty children.

A: Jiāzhāngmen dōu shì zuò shénme  
gōngzuòde?

What work do the parents do?

B: Yǒude shì gōngrén, yǒude shì  
gānbù, yǒude shì Jiěfàng-  
jūn, yě yǒude shì lǎoshī.  
Jiāzhāng dōu shì shuāngzhí-  
gōng.

Some are workers, some are cadre  
members, some are in the Peo-  
ple's Liberation Army, and some  
are teachers. The parents are  
all working couples.

A: Házimen chīde zěnmeyàng?

What's the children's food like?

B: Házimen yìtiān chī sìcì. Wǒ  
qùde shíhou, tāmen zài chī  
zhōngfàn. Wǒ kànjian tāmen  
chī mántou, báicài tāng, hé  
qīngjiāo chǎo ròusī.

The children eat four times a day.  
When I went, they were eating  
lunch. I saw them eat steamed  
rolls, cabbage soup, and shred-  
ded pork with green peppers.

A: Xiàwú chī diǎnxīn chī shénme?

What do they eat for their after-  
noon snack?

B: Tāmen gào su wo, xiàwú chī  
diǎnxīnde shíhou, hái-  
zimen yǒu shuǐguǒ, bǐnggān chī.

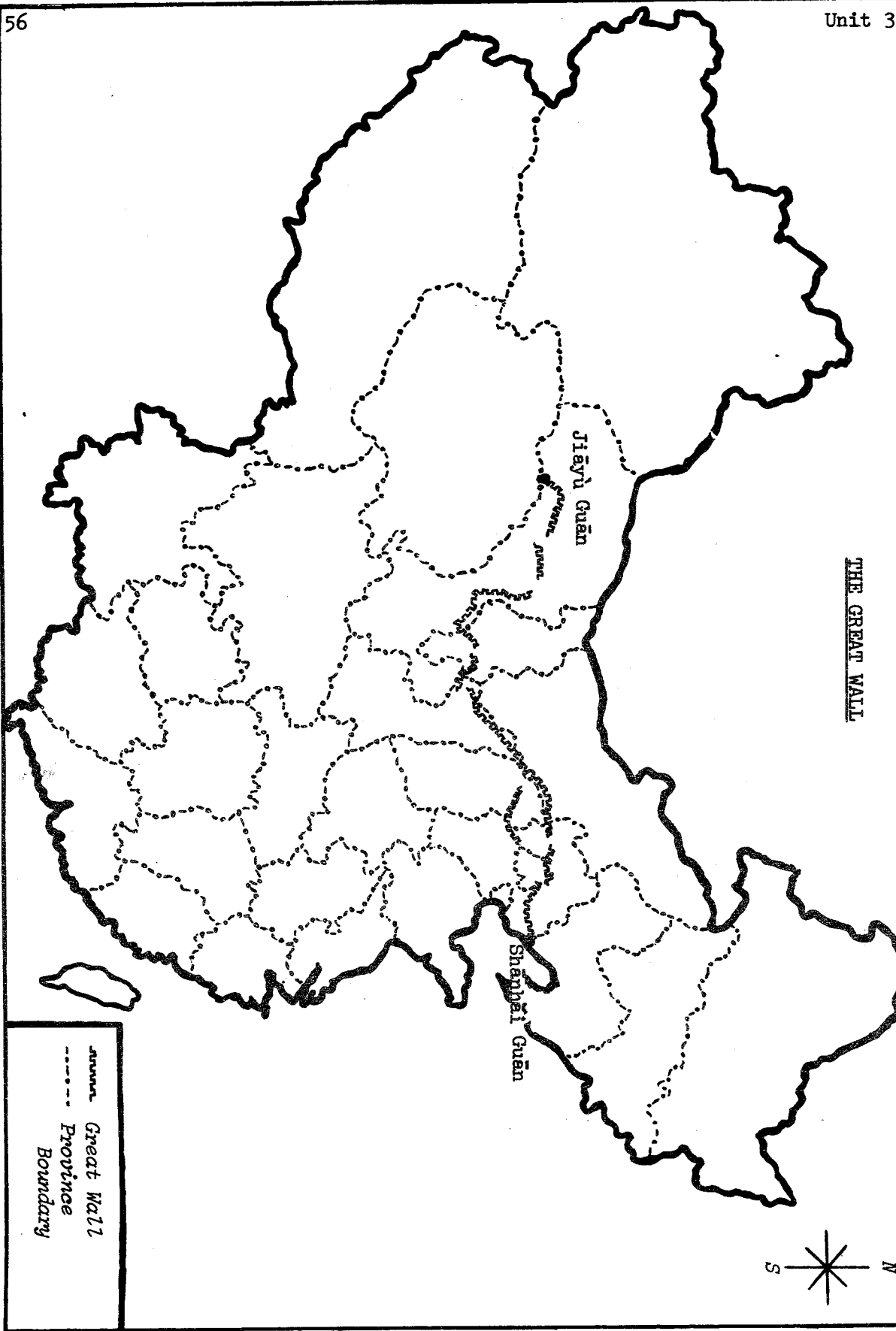
They told me that for the after-  
noon snack the children have  
fruit and cookies to eat.

A: En. Xià yí cì rúguo nǐ zài péi  
biéren qu cānguān yǒuéryuān  
nǐ gào su wo. Wǒ hé nimen  
yìqǐ qù.

A: Uh-huh. Next time if you go with  
someone else to visit a kinder-  
garten, tell me. I'll go with  
you.

B: Hǎo.

B: Okay.



THE GREAT WALL

Jiayu Guan

Shanghai Guan

Great Wall  
Province Boundary



Unit 3, Reference List

1. A: Wǒ zài Měiguode shihou,  
tīngshuōguo Chángchéng,  
yě kànjianguo Cháng-  
chéngde túpiàn.
- In America I heard of the  
Great Wall and saw  
pictures of it.
2. A: Wǒ jīntian qīnyǎn kàndào  
le, tèbié gāoxīng.
- I'm really happy to have seen  
it today with my own eyes.
3. A: Nǐ néng bu neng gào su  
wo Chángchéng shi  
shénme shíhou jiàn-  
zhùde?
- Can you tell me when  
the Great Wall was  
built?
- C: Chángchéng shi liǎng-  
qiānwǔbǎiduō nián  
yǐqián, Zhōucháo  
mòniánde shíhou, kāi-  
shǐ jiànzhude.
- It was over 2,500 years  
ago, during the last  
years of the Chou  
Dynasty, that they began  
to build the Great Wall.
4. A: Zhōucháo mònián shi  
gōngyuán qián duō-  
shao nián?
- When were the last years  
of the Chou Dynasty?
- C: Shi gōngyuán qián  
sānbǎi dào èrbǎi-  
wǔshínián zuǒyòu.
- Approximately from 300 to  
250 B.C.
5. A: Nèi shíhou wèishénme yào  
jiàn Chángchéng ne?
- At that time why did they  
want to build a 'Great  
Wall'?
- C: Yīnwei běifāng mínzú cháng-  
cháng lái qīnlüè Zhōngguode  
běibiān, suǒyǐ kāishǐ  
jiàn chéngqiáng.
- Because there were northern  
peoples who came to in-  
vade China, they began  
to build defense walls.

6. A: Nèi shíhòu Zhōngguó hái méi tōngyī ba?  
At that time China had not yet been united, **had it?**
- C: Duì. Nèi shíhòu Zhōngguó yǒu qīge xiǎo guó. Zhèixiē guójiā, wèile bǎohù zìjǐ, kāishǐ zài zhōngyàode dìfāng jiànqǐ chéngqiáng lái.  
That's right. At that time there were seven small states in China. In order to protect themselves, these countries began to build defense walls in important places.
7. A: O. Zhèixiē guójiā wèile fāngbèi běifāng mǐnzúde qīnlüè jiù kāishǐ jiàn chéngqiáng.  
Oh. In order to be on guard against the invasion of northern peoples, these countries began to build defense walls.
- C: Duì.  
That's right.
8. C: Qíncháo tōngyīle Zhōngguó yǐhòu, bǎ chéngqiáng liánchéng le yītiáo hěn chángde Chángchéng.  
After the Ch'in Dynasty united China, they took these defense walls and connected them into one long Great Wall.
9. C: Qíncháo tōngyīle Zhōngguó yǐhòu bǎ nèixiē xiǎo guó jiànzhùde chéngqiáng liánchéng le yītiáo hěn chángde Chángchéng.  
After the Ch'in Dynasty united China, they took these walls which were built by these small states and connected them into one long Great Wall.
10. A: Wǒmen xiànzài kànde shì Chángchéng zuì zǎode yí bùfen ma?  
Is what we are looking at now one of those earliest sections of the Great Wall?
- C: Yǒude shì zuì zǎode, yǒude shì hòulái xiūjiàn de.  
Some of it is the earliest, some of it is what was built later.



11. A: Chángchéng shì cóng  
shénme dìfang dào  
shénme dìfang?  
Where does the Great Wall  
begin and end?
- C: Chángchéng shì cóng  
Shānhǎi Guān, jīngguo  
Héběi, Shānxī, Nèi,  
Měnggǔ, Shānxī, yìzhí  
dào Jiāyú Guān.  
The Great Wall goes from the  
Shanghai Pass, passing  
through Hopeh, Shansi,  
Inner Mongolia, and  
Shensi, straight to the  
Chiayu Pass.
12. A: Chángchéng wèishénme  
yǒu jiào Wàn lǐ  
Chángchéng?  
Why is the Great Wall  
also called the '10,000  
Li Long Wall'?
- C: Chángchéng yǒu liùqiān-  
duō gōnglǐ. Rúguo yòng  
Huá lǐ lái jìsuan, yǒu yī-  
wànèrqiānduō Huá lǐ,  
suǒyǐ Zhōngguó rén  
jiào Wàn lǐ Chángchéng.  
The Great Wall is more  
than 6000 kilometers  
long. If you use Chinese  
miles to figure it out  
it's more than 12,000  
Chinese miles, so  
Chinese call it the  
'10,000 Li Long Wall'.
13. A: Chángchéng dàgāi jīngguo  
hěn duō cìde zhěngxiū  
ba?  
The Great Wall probably  
has undergone repairs  
many times, hasn't it?
- C: Duì. Zài Zhōngguó lìshǐ-  
shàng, zài Hàn cháo  
Táng cháo, Chángchéng  
dōu jīngguo hěn duō  
cìde zhěngxiū.  
That's right. In the course  
of Chinese history,  
during the Han and  
Tang Dynasties, the  
Great Wall underwent  
repairs many times.
14. A: Chángchéng yǒu duō gāo,  
yǒu duō kuān?  
How high and wide is the  
Great Wall?
- C: Dàgāi gāo sānshíhǎn, kuān  
shíwǔ dào èrshíhǎn.  
It's approximately 30 feet  
high and 15 to 20 feet  
wide.

15. C: Jīntian wǒmen kàndaode  
Chángchéng shì jīngguo  
Míngcháo dà guīmo xiū-  
jiàn yǐhòude Chángchéng.

The Great Wall that we  
are looking at today  
is the Great Wall which  
underwent the large  
scale repair and building  
of the Ming Dynasty.

16. A: Chángchéng zhènme cháng,  
xiūjiànqǐlái kě zhēn  
bù róngyi a!

The Great Wall is so long,  
it really must have  
been hard to build.

17. C: Wànli Chángchéng búdàn  
shì Zhōngguode wěidà  
jiànzhù, zài shìjiē-  
shang yě hěn yǒu míng.

So, the Great Wall is not  
only a great Chinese struc-  
ture, it is also famous  
throughout the whole world.

Vocabulary

bǎohù běifāng bùfen	to protect in the north, northern part, portion
chéngqiáng chǐ	defense walls, city wall a Chinese foot (unit of measurement)
-fāng fāngbèi	area to be on guard against, to take precautions against
gāoxìng gōngyuán (hòu) gōngyuán qián guān guīmo guójiā	to be happy A.D. B.C. mountain pass scope, scale country
Hàncháo hòulái Huáilǐ	Han Dynasty (206 B.C.-220 A.D.) afterwards Chinese mile (1/3 of an English mile)
jiàn jiànzhù	to build, to construct to build, to construct; structure, building
Jiāyù Guān	the Chiayü Pass, name of a place in Kansu Province
jīngguo	to pass through, to go through, to undergo
jìsuan	to calculate
kě kuān	indeed (intensifier) to be wide, to be broad
lián liáncheng	to connect to connect into
mínzú mònián	race, ethnic group the last years of a dynasty
-qilai qīnchāo qīnlüè qīnyǎn	when (doing)...; to start (doing)... Ch'in Dynasty (255-209 B.C.) to invade; invasion one's own eyes

Shānhǎi Guān

shìjiè

Tángcháo

tōngyī

túpiàn

Wànǎ Chángchéng

wěidà

wèi(le)

xiūjiàn

yòng...lái jìsuan

zhěngxiū

Zhōu Cháo

the Shanhai Pass, name of a  
place in Hopeh Province  
world

T'ang Dynasty (618-905 A.D.)

to unite, to unify

illustration, picture

The Great Wall of 10,000 Li

to be great

in order to, for

to build, to construct, to  
erect; to repair and build

if you use...to figure out

repair, put in order

Chou Dynasty

Unit 3, Reference Notes

1. A: Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou,  
tīngshuōguo Chángchéng,  
yě kànjianguo Cháng-  
chéngde túpiàn.

In America I heard of  
the Great Wall and saw  
pictures of it.

Notes on No. 1

túpiàn: 'illustration, sketch' Túpiàn refers to things that  
are drawn, or to any type of picture.

2. A: Wǒ jīntian qīnyǎn kàndào  
le, tèbié gāoxìng.

I'm really happy to  
have seen it with my  
own eyes today.

Notes on No. 2

qīnyǎn: 'one's own eyes' \*[You will also see words such as  
qīnshǒu, 'one's own hand', and qīnzì, 'personally, by oneself, in person'.]

...qīnyǎn kàndào le, tèbié gāoxìng: In the above sentence, even  
though there are no connecting words such as 'therefore', or 'and so'  
between the two clauses, the meaning is that the situation in the  
first clause CAUSES the feeling in the second clause. The use of the  
marker le shows the event in the first clause is completed, before  
the event in the second clause takes place.

3. A: Nǐ néng bu neng gàosu  
wo Chángchéng shì  
shénme shíhou jiànzhùde?

Can you tell me when  
the Great Wall was  
built?

- C: Chángchéng shì liǎng-  
qiānwūbǎiduō nián  
yǐqián Zhōucháo  
mōniánde shíhou kāi-  
shǐ jiànzhùde.

It was over 2,500 years  
ago, during the last  
years of the Chou  
Dynasty, that they  
began to build the  
Great Wall.

\* Brackets indicate additional information that you may find helpful  
but are not responsible for.

Notes on No. 3

jiànzhù: 'to build, to construct, a structure' This word can be either a verb or a noun. Compare Reference List sentence No. 3 with No. 17.

Zhōucháo mōnián: The word mōnián refers to the closing years of a life or some other period of time. Here you see it in one of its most common uses, referring to the last years of a dynasty.

4. A: Zhōucháo mōnián shi  
gōngyuán qián duō-  
shao nián?

When were the last  
years of the Chou  
Dynasty?

C: Shi gōngyuán qián  
sānbǎi dào èrbǎi-  
wūshínián zuǒyòu.

Approximately from 300  
to 250 B.C.

Notes on No. 4

gōngyuán/gōngyuán qián: 'A.D.' and 'B.C.' Literally gōngyuán might be translated 'Common Era'. These time words are one way of indicating that a year is A.D. or B.C.. Notice that these phrases precede the year. Gōngyuán hòu may also be used for A.D..

Gōngyuán qián èrbǎièrshí-  
èrnián

222 B.C.

Gōngyuán sìbǎisānshí-  
liùnián

436 A.D.

5. A: Nèi shíhou wèishénme yào  
jiàn Chángchéng ne?

At that time why did  
they want to build  
a 'Great Wall'?

C: Yīnwei běifāng mǐnzú cháng-  
cháng lái qīnlüè Zhōngguode  
běibiān, suǒyǐ kāishǐ  
jiàn chéngqiáng.

Because there were  
northern peoples who  
came to invade northern  
China, they began to build  
defense walls.

Notes on No. 5

chéngqiáng: 'defense walls' This word may also be translated as 'city walls', depending on the context. It refers to the type of fortified walls used for defense.

jiàn: 'to build, to construct' This is equivalent to the verb jiànzhù.

běifāng mǐnzú: 'northern peoples' The reference here is to nomadic barbarians to the north and northwest of China. In other contexts, mǐnzú may be translated as 'race', 'ethnic group', or 'nation', as in 'the American Indian Nations'.

6. A: Nèi shíhòu Zhōngguó hái méi tóngyība?

At that time China had not yet been united, had it?

C: Duì. Nèi shíhòu Zhōngguó yǒu qīge xiǎo guó. Zhèixiē guójiā, wèile bǎohù zìjǐ, kāishǐ zài zhòngyào de dìfāng jiànqǐ chéngqiáng lái.

That's right. At that time there were seven small states in China. In order to protect themselves, these countries began to build defense walls in important places.

7. A: O. Zhèixiē guójiā wèile fángbèi běifāng mǐnzú de qīnlüè jiù kāishǐ jiàn chéngqiáng.

Oh. In order to be on guard against the invasion of northern peoples, these countries began to build defense walls.

C: Duì.

That's right.

Notes on Nos. 6 and 7

tóngyī: 'to become united, to unite' The verb tóngyī can act as a process verb or as an action verb. Here are examples of each:

Yuènnán xiànzài tóngyī le.

Vietnam has become united.

Qín Shǐ Huáng tóngyī le Zhōngguó.

Ch'in Shih Huang united China.

guó/guójiā: Guó refers to kingdoms, independent states, and countries. Guójiā refers to countries and nations.

wèile: 'in order to, for the purpose of, for the sake of', Wèile introduces a phrase describing the purpose of the main verb which follows later in the sentence. A phrase with wèile may come at the very front of the sentence or after the subject.

Wèile yào qù kàn yíge  
péngyou, jīntian wǒ  
děi zǎo yídiǎr xià  
bān.

In order to go visit a  
friend, I have to leave  
work a little early  
today.

Tā wèile yào dào  
Zhōngguó qù gōng-  
zuò, suǒyì xiànzài  
zài xué Zhōngwén ne.

Because he wants to go  
to China to work, he  
is studying Chinese  
now.

Wèile háizi kéyì shàng  
nèige hǎo xuéxiào,  
wǒmen jìhua bān jiā.

In order for the children  
to go to that good  
school, we plan to move.

...jiànqǐ chéngqiáng lai: '...to start to build walls'  
The compound verb jiànqǐ lai, 'to start to build' is split up  
by the object, chéngqiáng. Verbs with two-syllable directional  
endings can be split up by the direct object or a location.  
Here are some examples:

Tā xiǎngchū yíge bànfa  
lai le.

He thought of a way.

Tā bǎ xíngli náshàng  
chē qu le.

He took the suitcases on  
the bus.

-qilai: As an ending used to form compound verbs, -qilai  
has several meanings. One is close to its literal meaning  
'to rise upward' [as in zhànqilai, 'to stand up']. Another meaning  
is 'to start'. (In this example, you need to know kū is the verb 'to cry')

Háizi kūqilai le.

The child started to  
cry.

8. C: Qíncháo tōngyīle Zhōng-  
guó yǐhòu bǎ nèixiē  
chéngqiáng liánchengle  
yítiao hěn chángde  
Chángchéng.

After the Ch'in Dynasty  
united China, they  
took these defense  
walls and connected  
then into one long  
Great Wall.



9. C: Qíncháo tǒngyīle Zhōngguó  
yǐhòu bā nēixiē xiǎo  
guó jiànzhùde chéng-  
qiáng liánchengle yìtiáo  
hěn chángde Chángchéng.
- After the Ch'in Dynasty  
united China, they took these  
defense walls which were  
built by these small  
states and connected  
them into one long  
Great Wall.

Notes on Nos. 8 and 9

liáncheng: 'to connect into' The verb 'to connect' is lián.  
-Chéng is used with a number of verbs to make a compound verb,  
with the effect that the meaning 'to become' is added to the  
meaning of the first verb. Liáncheng would then literally be  
'connect to become...'

Bǎ tāde chènshān gǎicheng  
yíjiàn xiǎo hái'zide yīfu.

Take his shirt and make it  
into a child's piece of  
clothing.

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèiběn shū  
fānyicheng Rìwén

Please translate this  
book into Japanese.

Zhèige hái'zi zhǎngcheng  
yíge dàren le!

The child has grown into  
an adult!

10. A: Wǒmen xiānzài kànde shì  
Chángchéng zuì zǎode  
yí bùfen ma?

Is what we are looking at  
now one of those earliest  
sections of the Great Wall?

C: Yǒude shì zuì zǎode,  
yǒude shì hòulái  
xiūjiànde.

Some of it is the earliest,  
some of it is what was  
later repaired and built.

Notes on No. 10

bùfen: 'portion, part, section'

Tā xiěde nèiběn shū, yǒude  
bùfen hǎo, yǒude bùfen  
bù hǎo.

Some of the sections of the  
book he wrote are good,  
some are not.

Wǒ fēn sān bùfen lái jiǎng  
xíng bu xíng?

Is it all right if I talk  
about it in three parts?

xiūjiàn: This verb has two meanings. One is 'to build',  
another is 'to repair and build, to renovate'.

11. A: Chángchéng shì cóng shénme  
dìfang dào shénme dìfang?

Where does the Great Wall  
begin and end?

C: Chángchéng shì cóng Shānhǎi  
Guān, jǐngguo Héběi,  
Shānxī, Nèi Měnggǔ,  
Shānxī, yìzhí dào  
Jiāyu Guān.

The Great Wall goes from  
the Shanhai Pass, passing  
through Hopeh, Shansi,  
Inner Mongolia, and  
Shensi, straight to the  
Chiayü Pass.

Notes on No. 11

...cóng shénme dìfang dào shénme dìfang?: Notice that  
the main verb is omitted in the sentence, and only the prepositional  
verbs cóng, 'from', and dào, 'to', are used.

12. A: Chángchéng wèishénme  
yǒu jiào Wànlǐ  
Chángchéng?

Why is the Great Wall also  
called the '10,000 Li  
Long Wall'?

C: Chángchéng yǒu liù-  
qiānduō gōnglǐ.  
Rúguo yòng Huáilǐ lái  
jìsuan yǒu yíwànèr-  
qiānduō Huáilǐ, suóyì  
Zhōngguo rén jiào  
Wànlǐ Chángchéng.

The Great Wall is more  
than 6000 kilometers  
long. If you use  
Chinese miles to figure  
it out, it's more than  
12,000 Chinese miles, so  
Chinese call it the  
'10,000 Li Long Wall'.

Notes on No. 12

yòng...lái jìsuan: 'if you use...to figure it out...'  
You may use other verbs instead of jìsuan, but notice that the  
verb lái remains the same.

Yòng Zhōngguo huà lái  
shuō hěn róngyì.

It's very easy to say  
it in Chinese.

Yòng Zhōngguo zì lái  
xiě, zhēn bù róngyì.

It's really difficult to  
write it in Chinese  
characters.

Nǐ bù néng yòng tāde  
huà lái shuō.

You can't use his words to  
say it.

...yǒu yíwànèrqiānduō Huáilǐ, suǒyì...: In the above passage, the guide explains that because the Great Wall is more than 12,000 Chinese miles long, they call it the 10,000 Li Long Wall. In Chinese they round off large numbers to the nearest unit of measurement, which is 10,000, while in English we would round off to the nearest 1,000.

13. A: Chángchéng dàgài jǐngguo  
hěn duō cìde zhěngxiū  
ba?

The Great Wall probably  
has undergone repairs  
many times, hasn't it?

C: Duì. Zài Zhōngguo lìshǐ-  
shang, zài Hāncháo  
Tángcháo, Chángchéng  
dōu jǐngguo hěn duō  
cìde zhěngxiū.

That's right. In the course  
of Chinese history. dur-  
ing the Han and T'ang  
Dynasties, the Great  
Wall underwent repairs  
many times.

#### Notes on No. 13

zhěngxiū: 'repairs' This word is also heard as xiūzhěng.

zài lìshǐshang: While in English we might say 'One finds many examples of this in history.', the Chinese say lìshǐshang.

14. A: Chángchéng yǒu duō gāo,  
yǒu duō kuān?

How high and wide is the  
Great Wall?

C: Dàgài gāo sānshíchǐ, kuān  
shíwǔ dào èrshíchǐ.

It's approximately 30 feet high,  
and 15 to 20 feet wide.

15. C: Jīntian wǒmen kàndaode  
Chángchéng shì jǐngguo  
Míngcháo dà guǐmo xiū-  
jiàn yǐhòude Chángchéng.

The Great Wall that we  
are looking at today  
is the Great Wall which  
underwent the large scale  
repair and building  
of the Ming Dynasty.

16. A: Chángchéng zhènme cháng,  
xiūjiànqilai kě zhēn  
bù róngyi a!

The Great Wall is so  
long, it really must  
have been hard  
to build!

#### Notes on No. 16

xiūjiànqilai: Here you see another meaning of the compound verb ending -qilai, 'when doing it'. Adding -qilai to xiūjiàn here results in the meaning of 'while the building was going on'.

Here are some other examples:

Zhèige yǐzide yàngzi hěn  
hǎokàn, kěshì zuòqilai  
bù shūfu.

This kind of chair is very  
attractive, but when you  
sit in it, it's un-  
comfortable.

Tā chàngqǐ gē lai zhēn  
nán tīng.

It sounds terrible when  
he sings.

Zuòqǐ gōng lai, tā bǐ  
shéi dōu kuài.

When it comes to working  
he is faster than anyone else.

kě: 'indeed' Kě is an adverb which intensifies a  
statement. For example:

A: Tā hěn hǎokàn!

He's really good looking!

B: Kě bu shì ma!

Isn't that the truth.

Xué Zhōngguóhuà, kě  
zhēn bù róngyi.

It's really not easy to  
learn Chinese.

17. C: Wǎnli Chángchéng búdàn  
shì Zhōngguóde wěidà  
jiànzhù, zài shìjiè-  
shàng yě hěn yǒu míng.

The Great Wall is not  
only a great Chinese struc-  
ture, it is also famous  
throughout the whole  
world.

## Unit 3, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

- C: Bādáling dào le. Nà wǒmen jiù mǎnmǎn wǎng shàng zǒu, mǎnmǎn kàn ba. Zǒu leile, wǒmen jiù xiūxi xiūxi.
- A: Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou, tīngshuō-guo Chángchéng, yě kànjianguo Chángchéngde túpiàn. Wǒ jīntian qīnyǎn kàndào le, tèbié gāoxìng. Nǐ néng bu néng gàosu wǒ Chángchéng shì shénme shíhou jiàn-zhùde?
- C: Chángchéng shì liǎngqiānwǔbǎi-duō nián yǐqián Zhōucháo mòniánde shíhou, kāishǐ jiàn-zhùde.
- A: Ōu. Liǎngqiānwǔbǎiduō nián yǐ-qián jiù kāishǐ jiànzhù le. Nèi shíhou wèishénme yào jiàn Chángchéng ne?
- C: Nèi shíhou Zhōngguo yǒu qíge xiǎo guó. Zhèixiē guójiā wèile bǎohù zìjǐ, fāngbèi běifāng mínzúde qīnlüè, kāishǐ zài zhōngyàode dìfang jiànqi chéngqiáng lai. Zhèi jiù shì Chángchéng zuì zǎode yí bùfen.
- A: Wǒmen xiànzài kànde jiù shì nèi-xiē zuì zǎode chéngqiáng ma?
- C: Yǒude shì zuì zǎode, yǒude shì hòulái xiūjiànde. Gōngyuán qián èrbǎièrshiyīnián Qín-cháo tǒngyī le Zhōngguo yǐhòu, bǎ nèixiē xiǎo guó jiànzhùde chéngqiáng lián-cheng le yìtiáo hěn chángde Chángchéng.
- A: Chángchéng shì cóng shénme dì-fang dào shénme dìfang?
- We've arrived at Pataling. So let's take our time walking up and looking around. If you get tired, we will rest.
- In America I heard of the Great Wall and saw pictures of it. I'm really happy to have seen it today with my own eyes. Can you tell me when the Great Wall was built?
- It was over 2,500 years ago, during the last years of the Chou Dynasty that they began to build the Great Wall.
- Oh, it was over 2,500 years ago that they began to build it. At that time why did they want to build a 'Great Wall'?
- At that time there were seven small states in China. In order to protect themselves and to be on guard against invasion from northern peoples, these countries began to build walls in important places. This was one of the earliest parts of the Great Wall.
- Is what we are looking at now one of those earliest walls?
- Some of it is the earliest, some of it is what was later repaired and built. In 221 B.C., after the Ch'in Dynasty united China, they took the walls which were built by the small states and connected them into one long Great Wall.
- Where does the Great Wall begin and end?

- C: Chángchéng shì cóng Zhōngguó zuì dōngbiānde Shānhǎi Guān jīngguó Héběi, Shānxī, Nèi Měnggǔ, Shānxī, yìzhí dào Gānsùde Jiāyù Guān. Yìgòng yǒu liùqiānduō gōnglǐ cháng.
- The Great Wall goes from China's easternmost Shanhai Pass, passing through Hopeh, Shansi Inner Mongolia, and Shensi straight to Kansu's Chiayu Pass. Altogether it's more than 6000 kilometers long.
- A: Chángchéng yòu jiào Wànlǐ Chángchéng. Nèi yǒu shí wèishénme ne?
- The Great Wall is also called the '10,000 Li Long Wall'. Why is that?
- C: Duì. Chángchéng yǒu liùqiānduō gōnglǐ. Rúguo yòng Huáilǐ lái jìsuan, yǒu yíwànèrqiānduō Huáilǐ, suǒyǐ Zhōngguó rén jiào Wànlǐ Chángchéng. ...Zài Zhōngguó lìshǐshàng, zài Hàncáo, Tángcáo, Chángchéng dōu jīngguó hěn duō cìde zhēngxiū.
- That's right. The Great Wall is more than 6000 kilometers long. If you use Chinese miles to figure it out, it's more than 12,000 Chinese miles, so Chinese call it the '10,000 Li Long Wall'. ...In the course of Chinese history, during the Han Dynasty and the Tang Dynasty, the Great Wall has gone through repairs many times.
- A: Chángchéng yǒu duō gāo, yǒu duō kuān?
- How high and how wide is the Great Wall?
- C: Dàgài gāo sānshíchǐ, kuān shíwǔ dào èrshíchǐ. Jīntiān wǒmen kàndaode Chángchéng shì jīngguó Míngcáo dà guǐmo xiūjiàn yǐhòude Chángchéng.
- It's approximately 30 feet high and 15 to 20 feet wide. The Great Wall that we are looking at today is the Great Wall which underwent the large scale repair and building of the Ming Dynasty.
- A: Chángchéng zhènde cháng, zhènde gāo, yòu zhènde kuān, xiūjiànqilai kě zhēn bù róngyi a!
- The Great Wall is so long, so high, and so wide, it really must have been hard to build.
- C: Suǒyǐ Wànlǐ Chángchéng búdàn shì Zhōngguóde wěidà jiànzhù, zài shìjièshàng yě hěn yǒu míng.
- That's why the Great Wall is not only a great Chinese structure, it is also famous throughout the world.

Unit 3, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

This exercise contains a conversation in which a visitor chats with a Chinese guide about places he is seeing on his visit to China, especially about the Great Wall.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you will probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 75 as you listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

gǔjì	ancient remains, ruins
gǔdài	ancient times
yòng lái	to be used for the purpose of, to be used in order to
Wǒ tóngyì	I agree
Guànlín	Kueilin, the name of a scenic city in Guǎngxī Province
dànshì	but, however
érqiě	and, moreover
shìjièshàng zuì wěidàde jiànzhù zhī yī	one of the greatest structures in the world
bǐjiào	comparatively, relatively

Note: In this conversation you will hear the verbs kāndào and mǎidào used. You've already seen the verb dào 'to arrive' used in compound verbs as in Zuòdào Xīdān huàn chē, 'Ride to Xidan and change buses', and Tā shì zuótiān pàidào zhèlǐ láide, 'He was sent over here yesterday'. In those instances, forming a compound verb dào added the meaning of 'to' to the meaning of the first verb. Here you will hear the compound verbs where dào adds the

meaning of 'successful completion'.

### Exercise 3

In this exercise you will hear a talk about the history of defense walls in China.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, turn to page 75 and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

chéngshì	city
ānquán	safety
sìzhōu	all sides
zhàn gǎng	to stand guard
biàn	to change
zuòyong	use, function
fāzhǎn	to develop
kuòdà	to expand
chāidiào	to tear down

### Exercise 4

In this exercise you will hear an American visitor who has come to China on business conversing with his Chinese guide about the Great Wall.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen to it again. On the second time through, answer the questions which are found on page 76

For this exercise you will need the following new vocabulary items:

gǔjì	ancient remains, ruins
shìjièshang yǒu míngde gǔjì zhī yī	one of the most famous ancient remains on earth
míngbai	to be clear, intelligible
yíxiàzi	all at once, at one fell swoop



těibù	northern part
gèzì	each one individually
chéng	to become
yuánlái	originally
liánjiēqilai	to connect up, to connect together
xiāngdāngyú	to be equivalent to, to be equal to
bǎocúnxialai	to preserve, to keep
chádài	dynasty
jìnxíng	to carry out, to do

### Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does the American visitor like to do in China?
2. What has undergone repairs in China?
3. Throughout the history of city walls, how has the Great Wall been protected?
4. Can you give some reasons why the Great Wall was built?
5. See if you can name some places where the visitor has been and which he has liked best of all.
6. What does the visitor want to buy and where does the guide suggest they go to buy it?

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Is the Great Wall the only defense wall in China? If not, why were the other city walls built?
2. Were city gates always kept open?
3. What happened after city walls were built?

4. The situation of the city walls changed in the latter years of the Ch'ing dynasty. Were the city walls still as important as before? If not, why not? What were some of the other changes that occurred?

#### Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What has the American businessman heard about the Great Wall? Has he been to see it already?
2. The American has not gone to Pataling yet. What is Pataling?
3. Was the Great Wall built all at once? If not, how was it built?
4. After Ch'in Shih Huang united China, how was the Great Wall then formed?
5. Why do the Chinese call it the 'Ten Thousand Li Long Wall'?
6. Has it been easy to preserve the Great Wall? Has it undergone repairs only once?

After you have answered all these questions yourself, you might want to take a look at the translation for these conversation on pages 77 through 81. You may also want to listen to the conversations again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

M: Xiǎo Wáng, nǐ hǎo! Jīntian xiàwǔ  
méiyǒu biéde ānpái, wǒmen  
tántan, hǎo bu hao?

Hi, Xiǎo Wáng! There aren't  
any other arrangements for  
this afternoon, so let's  
talk a bit, okay?

F: Hǎo a! Zhèi jitiān, nǐ qù kànle  
jǐge dìfang. Hěn yǒu yìsi ba?

Okay! These last few days  
you went to see a few  
places. They were inter-  
esting I suppose?

M: Hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan chūqu  
cānguān. Zhōngguó yóulǎn  
shǒucèshang yǒu hěn duō  
dìfang dōu shì lìshǐ gǔjī,  
dōu hěn piāoliang.

Yes, very. I really like to  
go out and sightsee. In  
the China travel guide  
there are a lot of places  
that are historic remains  
from ancient times, all of  
which are very beautiful.

F: Shìde. Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ zuòle  
hěn duō bǎohù lìshǐ gǔjīde  
gōngzuò.

Yes, they are. The Chinese  
government has done a lot  
of work to protect  
historic remains.

M: Wǒ kàndào Shānhǎi Guān, Jiāyù  
Guān, Běijīng fùjīnde Cháng-  
chéng, dōu jīngguó zhěngxiū.  
Bǎohùde hěn hǎo. Wǒ zhēn  
shì hěn gāoxìng.

I saw that the Shanhai Pass,  
the Chiayu Pass, and the  
Great Wall near Peking  
have all undergone repairs.  
They're very well protected.  
I was really happy about that.

F: Zhèixiē chéngqiáng yǒu gōng-  
yuán qiánhòu liǎngqiānwǔ-  
bǎiniǎnde lìshǐ. Shì  
Zhōucháo mōnián xiūjiànde.  
Zài Qíncháo, Hàrcháo,  
Tángcháo, Míngcháo dōu  
jīngguó jǐcì zhěngxiū. Jiěfàng  
yǐhòu, guójiā yòu zuòle dà  
guīmóde zhěngxiū. Suóyì bùfen  
Chángchéng bǎohùde bú cuò.

These city walls have a history  
spanning two thousand five  
hundred years, from B.C. to  
A.D.. They were built in the  
later part of the Chou  
Dynasty. They underwent re-  
pairs during the Ch'in, Han,  
T'ang, and Ming Dynasties.  
After Liberation, the country  
again made large-scale re-  
pairs. So sections of the  
Great Wall have been  
protected pretty well.

- M: Shàngcì, nǐ shuō Qíncháo de shíhòu, Zhōngguó rén bǎ hěn duō dìfāng de chéngqiáng liánchéng Chángchéng, shì wèile fángbèi biéde mǐnzú de qīnlüè.
- F: Shì a, yǒu sānshí chǐ gāo, shíwǔ dào èrshí chǐ kuān. Yíwànèrqiānduō Huáilǐ chángde Chángchéng--zài gǔdài zhēn kényì yǒng lái bǎohù zìjǐ de guójiā le.
- M: Wǒ tóngyì. Cóng túpiànshàng kàn, Chángchéng zhēn shì hěn hǎo kàn. Dào le Zhōngguó yǐhòu, wǒ qùguo Shànghǎi, Guǎngzhōu, Nánjīng, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, Xiān, Guìlín, zhèxiē dìfāng. Měige dìfāng dōu yǒu tèbiéde fēngjǐng, fēicháng piàoliang. Dànshì, wǒ zuì xǐhuānde hái shì Chángchéng. Wǒ yǐhòu yào zài qù yíci.
- F: Shìde. Chángchéng búdàn shì Zhōngguó, érguān shì shìjièshàng zuì wéidàde jiànzhù zhī yī. Míngtiān yǒu shíjiān, wǒmen kényì zài qù yíci.
- M: Zài Běijīng, kényì mǎidào Chángchéngde túpiàn ma?
- F: Kényì.
- M: Wǒ yào mǎi bǐjiào dàde, hái yào duō mǎi yìxiē, sònggei péngyou men.
- Last time, you said that in the Ch'in Dynasty the Chinese people connected together the city walls in a lot of places to form the Great Wall, in order to take precautions against invasions by other peoples.
- That's right. It's thirty feet high, and fifteen to twenty feet wide. A Great Wall over twelve thousand Chinese miles long--in ancient times it could really be used to protect our country.
- I agree. From the pictures, the Great Wall really looks beautiful. Since I've arrived in China I've been to Shanghai, Canton, Nanking, Hangchow, Soochow, Sian and Kueilin. Each place has a special scenery which is very beautiful. But I still like the Great Wall best of all. Later, I'd like to go there once again.
- Yes. The Great Wall is one of the greatest structures not only in China but in the whole world. If there's time tomorrow, we can go back once more.
- Can you buy pictures of the Great Wall in Peking?
- Yes, you can.
- I want to buy a rather large one, and I also want to buy a few more to give to friends.

- F: Hǎo a. Wǒmen dào  
Wángfújǐng qù kànkàn.
- M: Xiànzài hái yǒu shíjiān,  
wǒmen mǎshàng jiù qù.
- F: Hǎo, qǐng ba.

Okay. We'll go to  
Wangfujing to have a look.

There's still time now;  
let's go right away.

Okay, let's go.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

Chúle Wànlǐ Chángchéng, Zhōngguó  
hěn duō chéngshì yǐqián yě yǒu  
chéngqiáng. Tèbié shì zài běifāng,  
wèile fángbèi běibù mínzúde qīnlüè,  
bǎohù rénmínde ānquán, chángchéng zài  
chéngshì sīzhōu jiànzhù chéngqiáng.  
Chéngqiáng yǒu jǐge chéngmén.

Besides the 10,000 Li Great  
Wall, a lot of cities in China also  
used to have city walls. Especially  
in the north, in order to take  
precautions against invasions  
by the northern tribes and to  
protect the people's safety, they  
would often construct city walls  
around a city. There were several  
city gates in the city wall.

Cóngqián yǒu xiē chéngshì chéng-  
mén zǎoshàng kāi, wǎnshàng guān.  
Chéngménkǒu hái yǒu shìbīng zhān  
gǎng.

Formerly, in some cities, the  
city gates would open in the  
morning and close in the evening.  
There were also soldiers standing  
guard at the gates to the city.

Zhōngguó yǒu hěn duō chéngshì  
yǒu chéngqiáng, kěshì guǐmó dōu hěn  
xiǎo.

China has many cities with  
city walls but their scale is  
very small.

Chéngqiáng jiànzhùhǎo de yǐhòu,  
shíjiān jiǔ le, yídìng yào zhěngxiū.  
Yǒude chéngshìde chéngqiáng dōu  
jīngguo hěn duō cìde zhěngxiū.

After city walls were built,  
with the passage of time they  
had to be repaired. The walls  
of some cities underwent repairs  
many different times.

Qīngcháo mònián Zhōngguóde  
qíngkuàng biànlè, chéngqiángde  
zuòyòng xiǎo le. Tèbié shì Jiěfàng  
yǐhòu, chéngshì yào fāzhǎn, yào  
kuòdà, yǒu chéngqiáng hěn bù fāng-  
bian, suóyǐ Zhōngguó rén búdàn bù zài  
xiūjiàn chéngqiáng, hěn duō chéngshì  
hái bǎ chéngqiáng chāidiào le. Běijīng  
yǐqián yě yǒu chéngqiáng. Xiànzài yě  
dōu chāidiào le.

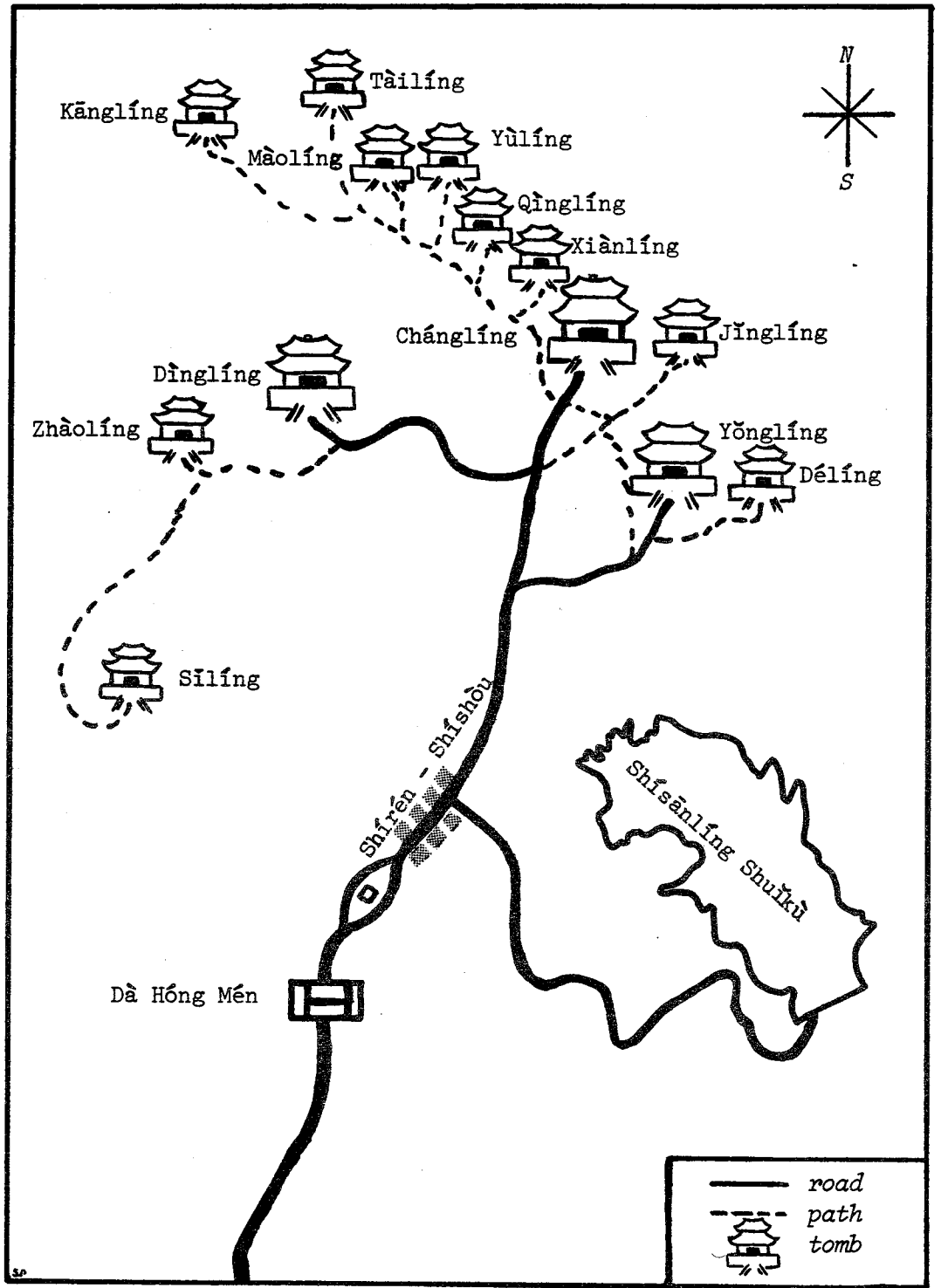
In the latter years of the  
Ch'ing Dynasty the situation in  
China changed, and the usefulness  
of the city walls decreased. Es-  
pecially after Liberation, for  
cities to develop and expand  
it was very inconvenient to have  
city walls, so the Chinese did not  
continue building city walls,  
and a lot of cities even tore  
down their walls. Peking too  
used to have city walls, but  
now they also have been torn down.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

- M: Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou jiù tīngshuōguo Zhōngguode Wànlǐ Chángchéng. Tā búdàn shì Zhōngguo wéidàde jiànzhù, yě shì shìjièshang yǒu míngde gǔjì zhī yī. Xiànzài wǒ lái Zhōngguo le. Wǒ hěn xiǎng zǎo yìdiǎn qù cānguān cānguān.
- I heard of the Great Wall when I was in America. Not only is it a great structure of China, but it is also one of the famous ancient remains of the world. Now that I have come to China, I'd like very much to visit it soon.
- F: Nǐ lái Zhōngguo yǐhòu hěn máng, hái méiyǒu qùguo Bādǎlǐng ne. Zhèige Xīngqītiān kěyǐ qù wǎrwar.
- You've been very busy since you came to China, and you haven't gone to Pataling yet. You can go see it this Sunday.
- M: Nǐ shuō Bādǎlǐng?
- Pataling you say?
- F: Chángchéng zài Běijīng zhèi yíduàn jiào Bādǎlǐng.
- The section of the Great Wall near Peking is called Pataling.
- M: Ou, Wǒ míngbai le. Nǐ kěyǐ bu kěyǐ gāosu wo Chángchéng shì shénme shíhou kāishǐ jiànzhùde?
- Oh, I see. Can you tell me when they began to build the Great Wall?
- F: Shi liǎngqiānduō nián yǐqián kāishǐ jiànzhùde.
- They began to build it more than two thousand years ago.
- M: Yígòng yǒngě duōshǎo nián cái jiànzhùhǎo?
- How many years did it take before the building was completed?
- F: Wànlǐ Chángchéng bú shì yíxiàzi jiànzhùqǐlaide. Nèi shíhou Zhōngguo hái méiyǒu tǒngyī. Zhōngguo běibù yǒu yìxiē xiǎo guó, wèile bǎohù zìjǐ, gèzì jiànzhù chéngqiáng fángbèi wàizúde qīnlüè. Hòulái dào le Qíncháo Qín Shìhuáng tǒngyī le Zhōngguo. Zhōngguo chéngle yíge tǒngyīde guójiā. Jiù bǎ yuánlái yíduàn yíduànde chéngqiáng liánjiēqilai le. Zhèiyàng jiù chéngle Wànlǐ Chángchéng.
- The Great Wall wasn't built all at once. At that time China wasn't unified yet. There were several small countries in the north of China. To protect themselves, they each built their own defense walls to guard against invasions by foreign tribes. Later, during the Ch'in Dynasty, Ch'in Shih Huang united China. China became a unified country. Then the sections of original defense walls were joined together. In this way the Great Wall was formed.

- M: Chángchéng zhēn yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng ma?  
Is the Great Wall really 10,000 Li long?
- F: Chángchéng yǒu liùqiānduō gōnglǐ, xiāngdāngyú yíwànèrqiānduō Huálǐ, suǒyì Zhōngguó rén jiào tā Wànlǐ Chángchéng.  
The Great Wall is six thousand kilometers long, which is equal to over 12,000 Chinese li, so the Chinese call it the 'Ten Thousand Li Long Wall'.
- M: Liǎngqiānduō nián yǐqián jiānzhùde Chángchéng jǐngguó zhènme jiǔde shíjiān dào xiànzài hái néng bǎocúnjialai yíding hěn bù róngyi.  
It must have been very difficult for the Great Wall, which was built over two thousand years ago, to have passed through such a long time and to have been able to be preserved until now.
- F: Duì le. Chángchéng zài hěn duō chāodài dōu jìnxíngguó zhēngxiū.  
Right. The Great Wall has undergone repairs in many different dynasties.
- M: Hǎo. Xièxie nǐ gàosu wǒ zènme duō guānyu Chángchéngde lìshǐ.  
All right. Thank you for telling me so much of the history of the Great Wall.

THE THIRTEEN TOMBS





Unit 4, Reference List

1. A: Míngtiān fàng jià. Wǒ xiǎng dào Mínglíng qù cānguān.  
 Tomorrow we have the day off. I'd like to visit the Ming Tombs.
2. A: Nǐ zhīdao zěnmē zǒu ma?  
 Do you know how to get there?
- B: Wǒ yě bù zěnmē qīngchū. Wǒ jiù zhīdao chūle. Dèshèngmén yìzhí cháo běi zǒu, jīngguo Chāng-píng Xiàn zài zǒu bu yuǎn, jiù dào Shísānlíng le. Lí Běijīng shíwǔ yǒu wǔshí gōnglǐ.  
 I'm not really too clear on that. I only know that when you go out of Teshengmen, you go straight north, go through Ch'angping county, and not far from there are the Thirteen Tombs. It's fifty kilometers from Peking.
3. B: Róngyi liǎojiě yě róngyi jì.  
 It's easy to understand and easy to remember.
4. A: Nèixiē shírén, shíshòu dōu zài shénme dìfang?  
 Where are those stone figures and stone animals?
- B: Nǐ yí dào nàr, jiù kàn-jian le.  
 As soon as you get there, you see them.
5. A: Zhèi shísānge líng yìtiān kàndewán kànbuwán?  
 Can you see all thirteen tombs in one day?
- B: Zhǔyào shì cānguān liǎngge. Yíge shì Chánglíng, yíge shì Dìnglíng.  
 The main thing is to visit two. One is Ch'angling, one is Tingling.
6. A: Chánglíng shì Míngcháo dìjǐge huángdìde língmù?  
 What emperor of the Ming Dynasty does the Ch'ang Tomb belong to?

- B: Chánglíng shì Míngcháo dìsāngē huángdìde língmù.  
The Ch'ang Tomb is the tomb of the third emperor of the Ming Dynasty.
7. B: Xiūde zuì zǎo, guīmo yě zuì dà.  
It was built the earliest, and its scale is the largest.
8. A: Tǐngshuō zài Yǐjiǔwǔbānián kǎogǔ gōngzuòzhě fāxiànle yíge dìxià gōngdiàn.  
I've heard that in 1958, archaeological workers discovered an underground palace.  
B: Duì, nèi shì zài Dǐnglíng.  
Yes, that was in the Ting Tomb.
9. A: Dǐnglíngde guīmo dà bu dà?  
Is the Ting Tomb built on a large scale?  
B: Hěn dà. Yǒu sānzǔò shítou mén. Měizǔò mén yǒu bādūn zhòng.  
Very large. There are three stone doors. Each door weighs eight tons.
10. A: Xiū zhèige língmù dàyuē yǒngē duó jiǔ?  
Approximately how long did it take to build this tomb?  
B: Yǒngē liùnián.  
It took six years.
11. A: Yǒngde cáiliào dōu shì cóng shénme dìfang láiide?  
Where did the materials which were used come from?  
B: Yǒngde cáiliào dōu shì cóng quán guó gèdì yùnláide.  
The materials which were used were shipped there from all over the country.
12. B: Nèi shíhou jiāotōng bú xiàng xiànzài zhènmē fādá.  
At that time transportation was not as developed as it is now.  
B: Yùnlái fēicháng kùnnan.  
It was very difficult to ship things.

13. A: Wǒ xiǎng zài zhèige  
mùli yíding hái  
fāxiànle hěn duō  
hěn yǒu jiàzhíde  
wénwù, duì ba?

B: Duì, dōu fàngzai  
Dìnglíng Bówùguǎnli.

I suppose they must have  
discovered many more val-  
uable artifacts  
in this tomb,  
right?

That's right, all are  
in the Ting Tomb Museum.

Vocabulary

bówugūǎn	museum
cáiliào	materials
Chānglíng	the Ch'ang Tomb
Chāngpíng Xiàn	Ch'angp'ing County (north of Peking)
dàyuē	about, approximately
Dīnglíng	the Ting Tomb
dùn	ton
fādá	to develop
fàng jià	to have a day off for a holiday
fāxiàn	to discover
gè-	each, every; the various
gōngdiàn	palace
gōngzuòzhě	worker
huángdì	emperor
jiāotōng	transportation
jiàzhí	value, worth
kǎogǔ	to do archaeological work
kǎogǔ gōngzuòzhě	archaeological worker
kùnnán	to be difficult; difficulty
liǎojiě	to understand, to comprehend
líng	grave or tomb (of emperor or leader)
mù	grave, tomb
quán	to be whole, to be complete
shìqū	urban area
shíren	stone figure
shíshòu	stone animal

wénwù

cultural relic, artifact

xiàn  
xiāng  
xiū

county  
to resemble, to be similar to  
to build, to erect

yùn

to ship, to transport

-zhě

(syllable indicating one who  
does the action, i.e., -er)

zhòng  
zhǔyào  
-zuò

to be heavy  
to be essential  
(counter for massive objects)

## Unit 4, Ref Notes

Unit 4, Reference Notes

1. A: Míngtiān fàng jià. Wǒ xiǎng dào Mínglíng qù cānguān. Tomorrow we have the day off. I'd like to visit the Ming Tombs.

Note on No. 1

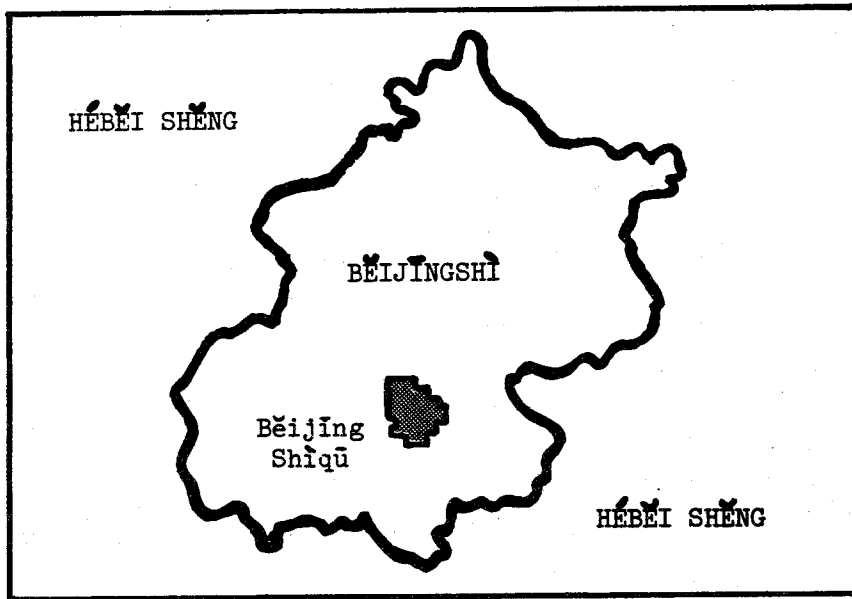
fàng jià: 'to have vacation, to have a day off', more literally 'to be let out on vacation'. This verb and object are used when the government, a school, an employer or some other institution gives a day off. [Another verb, qǐng jià, 'to request leave', is used when you ask to take time off yourself.]

2. A: Nǐ zhīdao zěnmē zǒu ma? Do you know how to get there?  
 B: Wǒ yě bù zěnmē qīngchū. Wǒ jiù zhīdao chūle Déshèngmén yìzhí cháo běi zǒu, jīngguo Chāngpíng Xiàn zài zǒu bù yuǎn, jiù dào Shí-sānlíng le. Lí Běijīng shìqū yǒu wǔshí gōnglǐ. I'm not really too clear on that. I only know that when you go out of Teshengmen, you go straight north, go through Ch'angp'ing County and not far from there are the Thirteen Tombs. It's fifty kilometers from Peking.

Notes on No. 2

If you compare these directions to the map on page 4 in Unit 1 you'll see that the speaker was indeed not too clear on where the Ming Tombs are located. You must in fact go out Teshengmen and into, not through the Ch'angp'ing County, where the tombs are located.

Běijīng shìqū: 'the Peking urban area'. This refers to the original city of Peking, which must be distinguished from Běijīngshì, 'the Peking Municipality'. Běijīngshì is made up of the following: Běijīng shìqū, which consists of four districts; the suburbs surrounding the city, which consist of five districts; and nine counties (of which Chāngpíng Xiàn is one). The Peking Municipality is an administrative division which is directly controlled by the central government, not the province of Hopei.



3. B: Róngyì liǎojiě yě  
róngyì jì.

It's easy to understand  
and easy to remember.

Note on No. 3

liǎojiě: 'to understand, to comprehend, to know, to grasp'  
This verb has a fairly wide range of reference, including people, difficulties, and complex situations. Like the verbs dǒng and zhīdao, liǎojiě is a state verb. The original tones on this verb are liǎojiě. The first syllable automatically changes to liǎo in front of another low tone. Some speakers drop the tone on the last syllable resulting in liǎojie.

Wǒ xiǎng liǎojie nǐmen  
zhèrde qíngkuàng.

I'd like to understand your  
situation here.

Guānyu wǒ jiālǐde shì,  
tā hěn liǎojie.

He understands a lot about  
my family affairs.

4. A: Nèixiē shíren, shíshòu  
dōu zài shénme  
dìfang?

Where are those stone  
figures and stone  
animals?

B: Nǐ yí dào nàr, jiù  
kànjian le.

As soon as you get there,  
you see them.

Note on No. 4

yī ... jiù ...: 'as soon as ..., then ...'.

Wǒ érzi yí fàng jià,  
wǒmen jiù qù Xiānggǎng.

As soon as my son has vacation,  
we're going to Hong Kong.

Kèren yì lái wǒmen jiù  
chī fàn.

As soon as the guests come,  
we'll eat.

5. A: Zhèi shí sāngē líng  
yì tiān kàn dewán  
kàn bu wán?

Can you see all thirteen tombs  
in one day?

B: Zhǔyào shì cānguān  
liǎng gè. Yí gè shì  
Chánglíng, yí gè  
shì Dìnglíng.

The main thing is to visit  
two. One is the Ch'ang tomb,  
one is the Ting tomb.

Notes on No. 5

Notice that in this sentence, the amount of time it would take to see the tombs (yì tiān) occurs up front in the sentence before the verb. This is an exception to the rule that words and phrases of DURATION come after the verb (e.g., Tā lái le sān tiān), while TIME-WHEN words and phrases come before the verb (e.g., Tā míng tiān lái). A generalization can be made here: Time phrases telling that something is done WITHIN a certain period of time come before the verb. Here are some more examples:

Tā yí gè zhōng tóu jiù  
xué huì le.

He learned it in one hour.

Tā yí gè yuè jiù bǎ nèi běn  
shū xiě chū lái le.

He wrote that book in one  
month.

Tā de liǎn yí xià zǐ jiù  
hóng le.

His face grew red in the  
blinking of an eye.

Tā liǎng nián qù le Niǔ yuē  
sì cì.

He went to New York four times  
in two years.

... kàn dewán kàn bu wán?: Here you see the compound verb of result kàn wán with the toneless syllables -de- and -bu- inserted between the action and the result. This pattern is used to express the meaning of 'able to finish seeing it' and 'not able to finish seeing it'. Using the affirmative and negative forms of the verb together forms the question. Usually, the negative alternative of a choice question is unstressed; dà bu dà, 'large or not'. Here, kàn bu wán is likewise unstressed, so when said at normal conversational speed, it may just have a low, falling pitch.



zhǔyào: 'to be major, essential'. Another translation for the sentence above could be 'There are mainly two that you visit'. Zhǔyào is often used as an adverb, and therefore is found in front of other verbs in the sentence. But since it often corresponds to some noun phrase in English, the English word order may be very different from the Chinese word order.

Wǒ xiǎng zhèige wèntí zhǔyào  
kàn nǐ zěnmē xiǎng.

I think that this question  
depends mainly on what you  
think.

[Notice that in the above sentence kàn means 'depends']

Nār zhǔyào zhǎnlǎn xiē  
shénme?

What are the main things they  
exhibit there?

Nǐ cānguān Shísānlíng zhǔ-  
yào kànde shì Chánglíng  
hé Dìnglíng.

When you visit the Thirteen Tombs,  
you see chiefly the Chang Tomb  
and the Ting Tomb.

Tā zhǔyào shuōde shì Qīng-  
cháo de lìshǐ.

He spoke mainly about Ch'ing  
dynasty history.

The translation 'to be main, essential' is potentially misleading because zhǔyào implies exclusivity. Often when zhǔyào is translated as 'mainly', it also means 'only'. For example:

Wǒ jīntiān lái zhǔyào shì  
yīnwèi wǒde péngyoumen  
dōu lái.

I came today only because all  
my friends are coming.

This sentence does not imply that there are any reasons of lesser importance. Because of this implication of zhǔyào, many speakers will not accept ?hěn zhǔyào 'very main'. This is similar to the English situation where many speakers find it odd to say 'very perfect'.

Chánglíng: This tomb contains the bodies of the Emperor Chéng Zǔ, whose reign title was Yǒng Lè, and his wife. The Emperor Chéng Zǔ ruled from 1403 to 1422.

Dìnglíng: This tomb contains the bodies of Emperor Shén Zōng, whose reign title was Wàn Lì, and his two wives. The Emperor Shén Zōng ruled from 1573 to 1620.

6. A: Chánglíng shì Míngcháo  
dìjǐge huángdìde  
língmù?  
What emperor of the Ming  
Dynasty does the Ch'ang  
Tomb belong to?
- B: Chánglíng shì Míngcháo  
dìsānge huángdìde  
língmù.  
The Ch'ang Tomb is the tomb  
of the third emperor of  
the Ming Dynasty.
7. B: Xiūde zuì zǎo, guīmo  
yě zuì dà.  
It was built the earliest,  
and its scale is the largest.

Note on No. 7

-de: Here is another example of how to describe how some action has been performed. The action to be described comes first. To this verb the marker -de is added, followed by an adjectival verb describing the MANNER of the action. Here the adverb zuì, 'the most', comes between the action verb and the adjectival verb.

8. A: Tīngshuō zài Yìjiǔwǔbā-  
nián kāogǔ gōngzuòzhě  
fāxiànle yíge dìxià  
gōngdiàn.  
I've heard that in 1958  
archaeological workers  
discovered an underground  
palace.
- B: Duì. Nèi shì zài Dìng-  
líng.  
Yes, that was in the Ting  
Tomb.

Notes on No. 8

kāogǔ gōngzuòzhě: 'archaeological worker' -zhě is an ending which turns an action verb into the noun indicating the one who does the action, much like the English '-er', as in 'writer'. Other examples are: xuézhě, 'scholar', láodōngzhě, 'worker, laborer', zuòzhě, 'author'. The number of verbs which can have -zhě added to them is limited, however; you are advised not to make up words ending in -zhě without conferring first with a Chinese speaker. For example, there is no pǎozhě, 'runner', or hēzhě, 'drinker'.

[Another ending, -jiā, which is added to nouns as well as verbs, is used for professionals or specialists in some activity. Zuòjiā is 'professional writer' (as opposed to a zuòzhě, for whom writing may not be a career, though one can say zhèipiān wénzhāngde zuòzhě, 'the author of this article').

The ending -jiā is added to subjects of study, as in zhèngzhì-xuéjiā, 'political scientist', or jīngjìxuéjiā, 'economist'. In the PRC these forms carry an elitist overtone, and therefore you find kāogǔxuéjiā, 'archaeologist', replaced by kāogǔ gōngzuòzhě.]

fāxiàn: 'to discover, a discovery' Here are some examples of fāxiàn used as both noun and verb. For the second example you need to know that Měizhōu dàlù is 'American continent', Gēlúnbù is 'Columbus'.

Wǒ fāxiànle yíge fēicháng  
yǒu yìside dìfang, wǒmen  
kěyǐ qù wán.

I've discovered an extremely  
interesting place, Where we can  
go have some fun.

Gēlúnbù zhǎodào le Měizhōu  
dàlù shì yíge wěidàde  
fāxiàn.

It was a great discovery when  
Columbus found the American  
continent.

9. A: Dìnglíngde guǐmo dà bu  
da?

Is the Ting Tomb built on a  
large scale?

B: Hěn dà. Yǒu sānzuoè shítou  
mén. Měizuoè mén yǒu  
bādūn zhòng.

Very large. There are three  
stone doors. Each door weighs  
eight tons.

#### Notes on No. 9

-zuò: This is the counter for massive objects, such as mountains (yízuò shān), buildings (yízuò lóu), great structures (yízuò wěidàde jiànzhù), etc.

The fact that the speaker uses the counter -zuò for these doors gives you an idea of their size.

... yǒu bādūn zhòng.: To give the weight of something, use the verb yǒu, the weight, and the verb zhòng, 'to be heavy'. To ask the weight, use the question word duō or a more specific question word such as jǐdūn, 'how many tons', as in Yǒu duō zhòng?, 'How heavy is it?', or Yǒu jǐdūn zhòng?, 'How many tons is it?'.

10. A: Xiū zhèige língmù dāyuē  
yǒngle duō jiǔ?

Approximately how long did it  
take to build this tomb?

B: Yǒngle liùnián.

It took six years.

#### Note on No. 10

dāyuē: 'about, approximately'.

Nǐde yào dāyuē shífēn zhōng  
jiù pèihǎo le.

Your prescription (medicine) will  
be filled in about ten minutes.

Zhèizuoè lóu dāyuē yǒu sān-  
bǎi niánde lìshǐ.

This building has about 300 years  
of history.

Tā dāyuē hái méi lái guo.

He probably hasn't been here  
before.

11. A: Yòngde cáiliào dōu shì  
cóng shénme dìfang  
láide?

Where did the materials which  
were used come from?

B: Yòngde cáiliào dōu shì  
cóng quán guó gèdì  
yùnláide.

The materials which were used  
were shipped there from all  
over the country.

Note on No. 11

gèdì: 'everyplace, various places' The syllable gè- can combine with other words and counters to give the idea of 'each \_\_\_\_\_' or 'various \_\_\_\_\_'. Here are some examples:

gègè	each and every
gèguó	each and every nation
gèrén	everybody
gèwèi	ladies and gentlemen (polite address)
gèyàng	each and every sort
gèzhǒng	each and every type

12. B: Nèi shíhou jiāotōng bú  
xiàng xiānzài zhēnme  
fādá.

At that time transportation  
was not as developed as it  
is now.

B: Yùnlilai fēicháng kùnnan.

It was very difficult  
to ship things.

Notes on No. 12

jiāotōng: 'traffic, transportation'

Zhèlǐde jiāotōng bù ānquán,  
Qìchē tài duō, kāide tài  
kuài.

The traffic here is not safe.  
There are too many cars, and  
they go too fast.

Qǐng ni zhǎo yíge jiāotōng  
jǐngchá lái.

Please ask a traffic officer to  
come here.

xiàng: 'to be similar to, to resemble'. Xiàng may be used as a prepositional verb, as in the sentence above, or as a full verb.

Tā xiàng tāde fùqin.

He resembles his father.

As a prepositional verb, xiàng is used in making comparisons. Notice the similarity of the word order between comparison sentences with xiàng and those with gēn.

Nǐ xiàng tā nàme gāo.

You're as tall as he is.

Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng gāo.

You're as tall as he is.

Comparison sentences with xiàng must have either yíyàng, zhènme (zènme), or nàme before the main verb. Note that xiàng connotes rather imprecise comparison as opposed to gēn, which connotes exact comparison. When items are compared in precisely quantifiable terms, the pattern ... gēn ... yíyàng ... is preferred. While Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng gāo states explicitly that you and he are the same height, Nǐ xiàng tā nàme gāo is a bit more vague.

Nǐ xiàng wǒ zhènme ná kuàizi.

You hold the chopsticks like I do.

Xiàng huār nàme hǎokàn.

As beautiful as a flower.

Xiànzài de tiānqì xiàng  
chūntiān zènme shūfu.

The weather now is as comfortable  
as spring.

Xiàng hǎishuǐ yíyàng lán.

As blue as sea water.

The negative bù comes before the prepositional verb xiàng.

Tā bú xiàng tā mèimei  
nàme cōngmíng.

He's not as intelligent as his  
little sister.

kùnnan: 'to be difficult, difficulty'. Here are some examples of kùnnan used both as a noun and as an adjectival verb.

Wǒ xiǎng nǐ kàn zhèiběn shū  
méiyǒu shenme kùnnan.

I don't think you'll have any  
difficulty reading this book.

Zuò zhèijiàn shì yǒu hěn dàde  
kùnnan.

There is great difficulty in  
doing this thing.

Nǐ yìtiān yào cānguān sānge  
dìfang hěn kùnnan.

It would be very difficult for  
you to visit three places in  
one day.

Zhèijiàn shì bù néng zuò,  
tài kùnnan le.

This thing can't be done. It's  
too difficult.

13. A: Wǒ xiǎng zài zhèige  
mǔlì yíding hái  
fāxiànle hěn duō  
hěn yǒu jiàzhíde  
wénwù, duì ba?

I suppose they must have  
discovered many more valuable  
artifacts in this tomb,  
right?

B: Duì, dōu fàngzai  
Dìnglíng Bówugǔǎnli.

That's right, all are in the  
Ting Tomb Museum.

## Unit 4, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

- A: Míngtiān fàng jià. Wǒ xiǎng  
dào Mínglíng qù cānguān.  
Nǐ zhīdao zenme  
zǒu ma?
- B: Wǒ yě bù zěnme qīngchu. Wǒ  
shì zuò gōnggōng qìchē  
qùde. Wǒ jiù zhīdao  
chūle Dèshèngmén yìzhí  
cháo běi zǒu, jīngguò Chāng-  
píng Xiàn, zài zǒu bù yuǎn,  
jiù dào Shísānlíng le.  
Lǐ Běijīng shìqū yǒu wǔshí  
gōnglǐ.
- A: Nǐ shuō Shísānlíng, zhèi  
shì shénme yìsi?
- B: Shísānlíng jiù shì Mínglíng.  
Yīnwei yǒu shísānge língmù,  
suǒyì wǒmen jiào ta Shísān-  
líng. Yīnwei shì Míngcháode  
língmù, suǒyì wàiguó rén  
jiào ta Mínglíng.
- A: Wǒ zài diànshìshàng kànjian  
nàr yǒu bù shǎo shírén,  
shíshòu, zuì yǒu yìsi.
- B: Duì, nǐ yí dào nàr, jiù  
kànjian nèixiē shírén,  
shíshòu le.
- A: Zhèi shísānge líng yìtiān  
kàndewán kanbuwan?
- B: Shísānlíng, dìfang hěn dà.  
Zhǔyào shì cānēn liǎngge  
dìfang. Yíge shì Chánglíng,  
yíge shì Dìnglíng.
- Tomorrow I have the day off. I  
like to visit the Ming  
Tombs. Do you know how  
to get there?
- I'm not really too clear on  
that. I took the bus there.  
I only know that when you  
go out of Teshengmen, you go  
straight north, go through  
Changping county, and not  
far from there are the Thirteen  
Tombs. It's fifty kilometers  
from Peking.
- You said Shihsanling.  
What does that mean?
- Shihsanling is the Ming Tombs.  
We call it Shihsanling be-  
cause there are thirteen  
tombs there. Foreigners call  
it the Ming Tombs because  
they are the tombs of the  
Ming Dynasty.
- I've seen on television that  
there are many stone  
figures and stone animals  
there. Really interesting.
- That's right. As soon as you  
get there, you see  
those stone figures and  
stone animals.
- Can you see all of these  
thirteen tombs in one day?
- The area of the Thirteen Tombs  
is very large. There are  
mainly two that you visit.  
One is the Ch'ang Tomb. One  
is the Ting Tomb.

- B: Chánglíng shì Míngcháo  
dìsānge huángdìde  
língmù. Xiūde zuì zǎo,  
guīmo yě zuì dà.
- A: Tīngshuō zài 1958 nián  
kǎogǔ gōngzuòzhě fāxiànle  
yíge dìxià gōngdiàn.
- B: Duì. Nèi shì zài Dìnglíng.  
Dìnglíng shì Míngcháo  
dìshísānge huángdìde. Zhèige  
mù shì yòng shítou xiūjiànle.  
Yǒu sānzuo shítou mén. Měizuo  
mén yǒu bādūn zhòng.
- Xiū zhèige língmù yòngle  
liùnián. Měitiān dāyuē  
yǒu sānwàn gōngrén gōngzuò.
- A: Yǒngde cáiliào dōu shì cóng  
quán guó gèdì yùnláide ma?
- B: Duì. Shénme dìfāngde dōu yǒu.  
Nèi shíhou jiāotōng bú xiàng  
xiànzài zhènmē fādá. Yùnlái  
fēicháng kùnnan.
- A: Zài zhèige mùli yídìng hái  
fāxiànle hěn duō hěn yǒu  
jiàzhíde wénwù ba.
- B: Duì. Dōu fàngzài Dìnglíng  
Bówuguǎnli. Nǐ yídìng děi  
qù kànkàn.
- The Ch'ang Tomb is the tomb of  
the third emperor of the  
Ming Dynasty. It was built  
the earliest, and its scale  
is the largest.
- I've heard that in 1958,  
archaeological workers  
discovered an underground  
palace.
- That's right. That's at  
Tingling. Tingling is the  
tomb of the thirteenth  
emperor of the Ming Dynasty.  
That tomb is constructed of  
stone. There are three stone  
doors. Each door weighs 8 tons.
- It took about six years to  
build the tomb. Everyday  
there were about 30,000  
laborers working.
- Were the materials that were  
used shipped there from all  
over the country?
- Yes, from every place. At  
that time transportation  
was not as developed as it  
is now. It was very  
difficult to ship things.
- They must have discovered many  
more valuable cultural  
artifacts in that tomb.
- Yes. And all are in the  
Ting Tomb Museum. You should  
really go see it.

Unit 4, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

This exercise contains a conversation between a foreign student and his Chinese friend in which they talk about the Peking Museum of History which one of them visited the day before.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you might want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 100 as you listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

zhǎnlǎn	to exhibit
gǔdài	ancient times
gègè	each and every
shíqī	time period, era
shōují	to collect
zhēnguì	to be precious, valuable
chuàngzào	to create

Exercise 3

In this exercise you will hear a conversation between a member of the Canadian Embassy staff, who has been invited to a banquet in the Great Hall of the People, and a Chinese staff member of the Canadian Embassy, who provides the Canadian with some details about the Great Hall of the People.

Listen to the conversation once straight through, then listen a



second time and turn to page 100 and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

jiēdao	to receive
Rénmín Dàhuìtáng	the Great Hall of the People
yànhuì	feast, banquet
píngfāng gōngchǐ	square meter
dàlǐtáng	auditorium
yànhuìtīng	banquet hall
shěng	province
huìyitīng	meeting hall
bùzhi	interior decor
tèdiǎn	distinctive point
zhīchí	support

Note: In this conversation you will hear another example of the verb dào used in compound verbs to indicate successful completion of the action:

Wǒ jiēdao Wàijiāobùde qǐngtiē. I've received an invitation from the  
Ministry of Foreign Affairs.

#### Exercise 4

In this exercise an American visitor who desires to visit the Ming Tombs asks his Chinese guide for some information about them.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then on the second time through answer the questions found on page 100.

For this exercise you will need the following new words and phrases:

gǔdài	ancient times
érqiě	and, moreover
Tiānshòu Shān	the name of a mountain
mǎn shān	the whole mountain
shìzi shù	persimmon tree

zhèng hǎo

just right

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What did the Chinese friend go visit on Sunday? Where is this located?
2. What sort of exhibits can be found in the museum?
3. Are the things exhibited from modern times only? Were these products all discovered in one place?
4. What feeling do you get after visiting the museum?
5. When can a person go visit the Museum and does it take long to see it?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation found on page 102. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where is the Canadian staff member going and when does she plan to go?
2. How does the Canadian feel about going to the Great Hall of the People?
3. Is the Great Hall of the People large? Just how large is it? Is it decorated all the same?
4. Why, according to the Chinese staff member in the Embassy, did the Great Hall not take a long time to build?

After having answered these questions yourself, you might want to take a look at the translation for this conversation found on page 103. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will

be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where are the Ming Tombs located?
2. Are 'Thirteen Tombs' and 'Ming Tombs' names for the same place? If so, why are the two names used?
3. How would you go from Peking to the Thirteen Tombs? Once you get there, will you visit all the tombs? If not, why not?
4. What are the first things you see when you arrive at the Thirteen Tombs?
5. The guide suggests that the visitor go see the Thirteen Tombs at a certain time. When is this? Why does she make this suggestion?

After having answered these questions yourself, look on page 104 for the translation to this dialogue, then listen again to the dialogue to help you prepare to say your answers orally.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

- M: Zuótiān shì Xīngqītiān, nǐ dào nǎr qù wán le?  
Yesterday was Sunday. Where did you go to have fun?
- F: Wǒ qù cānguān Běijīng Lìshǐ Bówuguǎn le.  
I went to visit the Peking Museum of History.
- M: Běijīng Lìshǐ Bówuguǎn zài nǎr?  
Where is the Peking Museum of History?
- F: Zài Tiānānmén dōngbiān.  
To the east of T'ien An Men.
- M: Guǐmo dà bu dà?  
Is it extensive?
- F: Hěn dà.  
Very extensive.
- M: Nǎr zhǔyào zhǎnlǎn xiē shénme?  
What are the main things they have exhibited?
- F: Zhǔyào yǒu cóng gǔdài yìzhí dào xiànzài de gègè shíqī de lìshǐ wénwù, dōu shì kǎogǔ gōngzuò-zhě zài quán guó gèdì fāxiàn hé shōují de, fēicháng zhēngù. Nǐ kànle Běijīng Lìshǐ Bówuguǎn yǐhòu, yíding huì juéde lìshǐ shì láodòng rénmin chuàngzào de.  
The main things there are historical cultural products of every period from ancient times all the way to the present. They were discovered and collected by archaeological workers in various places throughout the country, and are very valuable. After you've seen the Peking Museum of History you will surely feel that history is created by the working people.
- M: Lìshǐ Bówuguǎn měitiān dōu kāi ma?  
Is the Museum of History open every day?
- F: Měitiān dōu kāi.  
Yes.
- M: Qù cānguān Lìshǐ Bówuguǎn yào yòng duōshao shíjiān?  
How long does it take to visit the Museum of History?
- F: Zuì shǎo yào bàntiān.  
At least half a day.
- M: Wǒ yǐhòu yíding yào qù kànkàn.  
I'll have to go see it sometime.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

F: Wǒ jiēdao Wàijiāobùde qǐngtiē.  
 Hòutiān wǎnshang zài Rénmín  
 Dàhuìtáng yǒu yíge yànhuì.  
 Dàshiguān yǒu hěn duō rén qù.  
 Wǒ hěn gāoxìng. Wǒ hái méi  
 qùguo Rénmín Dàhuìtáng ne.

I've received an invitation from  
 the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.  
 The day after tomorrow in the  
 evening there's going to be a  
 banquet in the Great Hall of the  
 People. There are a lot of  
 people from the embassy going.  
 I'm so happy. I haven't been  
 to the Great Hall of the People  
 yet.

M: Rénmín Dàhuìtáng hěn dà, hěn  
 piàoliang, shì yíge wěidàde  
 jiànzhù.

The Great Hall of the People is  
 large and beautiful. It's a  
 great building.

F: Rénmín Dàhuìtáng shì shénme shíhou  
 jiànzhùhǎode?

When was it completed?

M: Shì 1945 nián Jiǔyue jiànzhùhǎode.

It was completed in September, 1954.

F: Yǒu duō dà?

How big is it?

M: Yǒu qīshíwànyíqiānliùbǎi píngfāng  
 gōngchǐ. Rénmín Dàhuìtáng yǒu  
 yíge kényi zuò yíwàn rénde dàlìtáng,  
 yǒu yíge kényi zuò wǔqiān rénde  
 yànhuìtīng. Měi yí shěng yǒu  
 yíge huìyítīng. Měi yíge huìyí-  
 tīngde bùzhí dou bù yíyàng, dōu  
 yǒu tèdiǎn.

It's 701,600 square meters. It  
 has an auditorium which can seat  
 10,000 people and a banquet hall  
 that can seat 5,000. There is  
 a meeting hall for each province,  
 and the decor of each of the  
 meeting halls is different; each  
 has its distinctive points.

F: Zhènmè wěidàde jiànzhù yíding  
 yòngle hěn chángde shíjian cái  
 jiànzhùhǎode ba!

It must have taken a long time to  
 build such a great building!

M: Bú shì. Yīnwei yǒu quán guó rén-  
mínde zhíchí, yígòng zhǐ yòng le  
shíge yuède shíjian jiù jiànzhù-  
hǎo le. Dāngrán zài jiànzhùde  
shíhou yǒu hěn duō kùnnan. Jiànzhù  
cáiliào shì cóng quán guó gèdì  
yùnláide. Búguò xiānzài jiāotōng  
fādá, bǐ yǐqián jiù fāngbian duō le.

No. Because it had the support of  
the people of the entire country  
it took only ten months to com-  
plete it, altogether. Of course  
there were a lot of difficulties  
in building it. The building  
materials were shipped from all  
over the whole country. But now  
transportation is developed and  
it is much more convenient  
than before.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

M: Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou jiù tīng-  
shuō Mínglíng shì Zhōngguó  
gǔdàide wěidà jiànzhù. Wǒ hěn  
xiǎng qù kànkàn. Mínglíng lí  
Běijīng shìqǔ yuǎn ma?

When I was in America I heard that  
the Ming Tombs were a great  
structure from Chinese antiquity.  
I'd like to go see them very  
much. Are the Ming Tombs far  
from the city of Peking?

F: Bú tài yuǎn. Shísānlíng lí  
Běijīng shìqǔ yǒu wúshí gōnglǐ.

Not too far. The Thirteen Tombs  
are fifty kilometers from the  
city of Peking.

M: Nǐ shuō Shísānlíng, Shísānlíng  
shì shénme yìsi?

The Thirteen Tombs, you say?  
What does that mean?

F: Shísānlíng jiù shì Mínglíng.  
Wǒmen Zhōngguó rén jiào Shísān-  
líng yīnwei nàr yǒu shísānge  
huángdìde língmù. Wàiguó rén  
jiào Mínglíng yīnwei nèi shì  
Míngcháo de língmù.

The Thirteen Tombs are the Ming  
Tombs. We Chinese call them  
the Thirteen Tombs because there  
are thirteen emperors' tombs  
there. Foreigners call them  
the Ming Tombs because they're  
tombs of the Ming dynasty.

M: Mínglíng shì zài Běijīngde  
nǎibiān?

Which direction are the Thirteen  
tombs from Peking?

F: Zài Běijīngde běibiān. Nǐ cóng  
Déshèngmén wàng běi zǒu, yǒu  
yítíáo dà lù, yìzhí dào Shísān-  
líng. Shísānlíng dìfāng hěn dà.  
Nǐ cānguān Shísānlíng zhǔyào  
kànde shì Chánglíng hé Dìnglíng.

They're to the north of Peking.  
From Teshengmen you go north.  
There's a main road which goes  
directly to the Thirteen Tombs.  
The Thirteen Tombs cover a large  
area. The main things you will  
see when you visit the Thirteen  
Tombs are the Ch'ang Tomb and  
the Ting Tomb.

M: Biéde língmù ne?

And the other tombs?

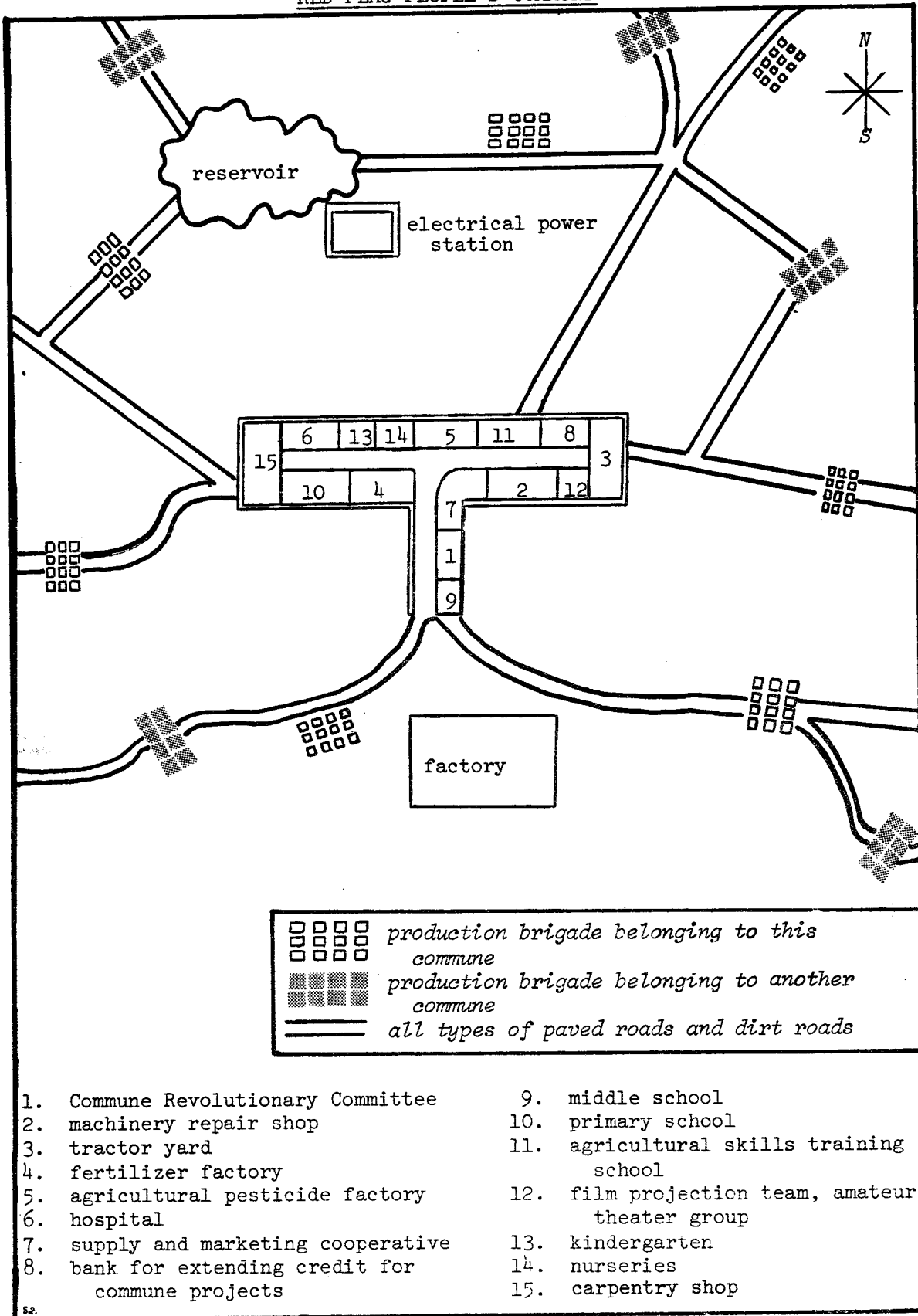
F: Suīrán biéde língmù kéyì qù kàn,  
kěshì kànle Chānglíng hé Dìng-  
líng yǐhòu zài qù kàn qítāde  
língmù, jiù juéde méi shenme  
yìsi le. Ergiě měige língmù lí  
língwàide língmù yě hěn yuǎn.  
. . . Nǐ yídào Shísānlíng jiù  
kànjian yíge Dàhóngmén, guòle  
Dàhóngmén bù yuǎn, lùde liǎng-  
biār yǒu èrshiwūge shíshòu, shìèr-  
ge shíren, hěn hǎo kàn. . . .  
Shísānlíng shì zài Tiānshòu Shān,  
shānshang yǒu hěn duō shìzi shù,  
qiūtiānde shíhou shìzi hóng le,  
mǎn shān dōu shì hóng yánsè.  
Zhēn shì piāoliangjǐle. Xiānzài  
yǐjīng shì qiūtiān le. Nǐ zài  
děng liǎngge xīngqī qù zhèng  
hǎo.

M: Hǎo, hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.

Although you can go see the other  
tombs, after you've seen the  
Ch'ang Tomb and the Ting Tomb,  
if you go look at the other  
tombs you don't feel they're  
all that interesting. And what's  
more, each tomb is also very  
far from the other tombs. . . .  
When you get to the Thirteen  
Tombs you see a **Great Red Gate**.  
Not far from the **Great Red Gate**,  
along both sides of the road,  
there are twenty-five stone  
animals and twelve stone men.  
. . . It's very beautiful. . . .  
The Thirteen Tombs are T'ien  
Shou Mountain, and there are  
a lot of persimmon trees on  
the mountain. In the fall,  
when the persimmons turn red,  
the whole mountain is red. It's  
really very pretty. It's al-  
ready autumn now. If you wait  
and go in two more weeks it  
will be just right.

All right. Thank you.

RED FLAG PEOPLE'S COMMUNE





Unit 5, Reference List

1. A: Wǒmen qù cānguānde nèige  
gōngshè jiào  
shénme?  
B: Jiào Hóngqí Rénmín Gōngshè.
2. B: 'Nóngyè Xué Dàzhài.'
3. B: Zhèi shì wǒge 'Nóngyè Xué  
Dàzhài'de xiānjìn  
dānwèi.
4. A: Nǐmen gōngshè tǔdì  
miànji duō dǎ?  
B: Tǔdì miànji jiǔshí  
píngfāng gōnglǐ.
5. A: Gōngshè shì zěnme  
zǔzhìde?  
B: Gōngshède zǔzhì fēn sānjí  
gōngshè xiàtóu yǒu  
liùge shēngchǎn dàduì,  
shēngchǎn dàduì  
xiàtóu yǒu qīshíèrge  
shēngchǎn duì.
6. A: Nǐmen zhèige gōngshè  
shēngchǎn shénme?  
B: Wǒmen gōngshè zhǔyào  
shì shēngchǎn liángshi,  
yě shēngchǎn shuǐguo,  
shūcài, hái yǒu yāzi,  
zhū hé yú.
7. A: Zhèr yǒude shíhou  
fāshēng shuǐzāi ma?  
B: Wǒmen zhèige dìqū zài  
Jiěfàng qián chángcháng  
fāshēng hǎnzāi, shuǐzāi.
- What's the name of the  
commune that we are  
going to visit?  
It's called the Red Flag  
People's Commune.  
'In Agriculture Learn  
from Tachai.'  
This is an advanced unit  
which 'In Agriculture  
Learns from Tachai.'  
How much land does your  
commune have?  
The land area is 90  
square kilometers.  
How is the commune  
organized?  
The commune is divided  
into three levels:  
under the commune are  
six production brigades,  
and under the six  
production brigades  
are 72 production  
teams.  
What does your commune  
produce?  
Our commune mainly  
produces grain, but  
it also produces fruit,  
vegetables, ducks,  
pigs, and fish.  
Do you sometimes have  
floods here?  
Before Liberation this  
area of land often  
had droughts and floods.

8. B: Yǐqián tǔrǎng yě bù hǎo. In the past the soil was not good either.
9. A: Nèige shíhou měi gōngqǐng tǔdì shēngchǎn duōshao liángshi? How much grain did each hectare of land produce at that time?
- B: Měi gōngqǐng tǔdì píngjūn yìnián zhǐ shēngchǎn bābǎi gōngjīn zuǒyòude liángshi. Each hectare of land on the average only produced about 800 kilograms of grain per year.
10. B: Jiěfàng yǐhòu, tāmen xiūjiànle shuǐkù. After Liberation, they constructed a reservoir.
11. B: Xiànzài de shēngchǎn děngyú Jiěfàng yǐqián de bābèi duō. Now the production is equal to more than eight times the production before the Liberation.
12. B: Nèige gōngshè hái yǒu yíge huàféichǎng hé yíge nóngyàochǎng. That commune also has a chemical fertilizer factory and an agricultural pesticide factory.
13. A: Zhèige gōngshè jīxièhuà de qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng? What is the situation regarding mechanization on this commune?
- B: Wǒmen yǐjīng shíxíng nóngyè jīxièhuà. We have already put agricultural mechanization into effect.
- Not on Tape -
14. huàféi chemical fertilizer
15. nóngyào agricultural pesticide

## Unit 5

Vocabulary

-bèi	times, -fold (i.e., threefold)
chǎng	factory
dàduì	'brigade' as in production brigade
dānwèi	unit (of organization)
Dàzhài	Tachai, name of model commune
dēngyú	to be equal to, to be equivalent
dìqū	area
duì	team (i.e., production team)
fāshēng	to happen, to occur
fēn	to divide
gōngjīn	kilogram (approximately 2.2 lbs.)
gōngqǐng	hectare (approximately 2 1/2 acres)
hànzāi	drought
Hóngqí Gōngshè	Red Flag Commune
-huà	-ize (i.e., modernize)
huàféi	chemical fertilizer
huàféichǎng	chemical fertilizer factory
jí	level (of organization)
jīxièhuà	machanization; to mechanize
liángshi	grain
miànji	surface, surface area
nóngyào	agricultural pesticide
nóngyàochǎng	agricultural pesticide factory
píngfāng	square (used in area measurement)
píngjūn	average, on the average
shēngchǎn	production; to produce
shíxíng	to put into effect
shūcài	vegetables
shuǐkù	reservoir
shuǐzāi	flood

tǔdì  
tǔrǎng

land  
soil

xiānjìn

to advance; advanced

yāzi

duck

zhū  
zūzhi

pig  
organization; to organize

Unit 5, Reference Notes

1. A: Wōmen qù cānguānde nèige  
gōngshè jiào  
shénme? What's the name of the  
commune that we are  
going to visit?
- B: Jiào Hóngqí Rénmín Gōngshè. It's called the Red Flag  
People's Commune.

Note on No. 1

Hóngqí Rénmín Gōngshè: 'Red Flag People's Commune'. There are many communes in China called by this name. Another common name is Dōngfēng Rénmín Gōngshè, 'East Wind People's Commune'.

2. B: 'Nóngyè Xué Dàzhài.' 'In Agriculture Learn from  
Tachai.'

Note on No. 2

This is a slogan which came out in 1964. It encourages all who are involved with agriculture to learn from the model commune, Dàzhài, located in Shānxī Province.

3. B: Zhèi shì yíge 'Nóngyè Xué  
Dàzhài'de xiānjiàn  
dānwèi. This is an advanced unit which  
'In Agriculture Learns from  
Tachai.'

Note on No. 3

xiānjiàn dānwèi: 'advanced unit'. This is a unit of a factory or a commune which has made excellent achievements. In order for a unit to qualify as an advanced unit, it must have 1) carried out all political movements successfully, 2) successfully put into effect each policy directive, and 3) completely fulfilled the national plan for its product.

4. A: Nǐmen gōngshè tǔdì  
miànji duō dà? How much land does your commune  
have?
- B: Tǔdì miànji jiǔshí  
píngfāng gōnglǐ. The land area is 90 square  
kilometers.

Notes on No. 4

miànji: 'surface area'. Notice that in the answer it is not necessary to use any verb when giving the area. This is similar to the situation when giving ages or prices.

Tā èrshiqī suì le.

She is twenty-seven years old.

Nèiběn shū sìkuài qián.

That book is four dollars.

Quán shè miànji liùshiqī  
píngfāng gōnglǐ.

The area of the whole commune is  
67 square kilometers.

5. A: Gōngshè shì zěnmē  
zǔzhìde?

How is the commune organized?

B: Gōngshède zǔzhì fēn sānjí:  
gōngshè xiàtóu yǒu  
liùge shēngchǎn dàduì,  
shēngchǎn dàduì  
xiàtóu yǒu qīshíèrge  
shēngchǎn duì.

The commune is divided  
into three levels: under  
the commune are six  
production brigades, and  
under the six production  
brigades are 72 production  
teams.

Notes on No. 5

... shì zěnmē zǔzhìde?: The marker de at the end of the question is the marker for modification. The modified noun which would follow the marker de is omitted because it is understood.

Gōngshè fēn sānjí: There are three levels of commune organization: the team, the brigade, and the commune itself. At the top is the commune's revolutionary committee [Gémìng Wēiyuǎnhuì]. Below that, each commune may have six to eight production brigades. A production brigade consists of the original farm village, which is then divided and organized into production teams. Commune members live in individual houses.

All the land, buildings, shops, clinics, large machinery, electrical power stations, factories, and so on belong to the commune.

However, the planning of the production and the paying of the members, which depends on the amount of production, is done on the production team level. All the teams have their own livestock, but they take turns borrowing large machines such as planters or tractors from the commune. Production teams often specialize in one type of activity, such as crop raising, machinery repair, or animal husbandry. Production brigades handle tasks which are beyond the capacity of a team, such as irrigation.

6. A: Nǐmen zhèige gōngshè  
shēngchǎn shénme?

What does your commune  
produce?

B: Wǒmen gōngshè zhǔyào  
shì shēngchǎn liángshi,  
yě shēngchǎn shuǐguǒ,  
shūcài, hái yǒu yāzi,  
zhū hé yú.

Our commune mainly  
produces grain, but  
it also produces fruit,  
vegetables, ducks,  
pigs, and fish.

7. A: Zhèr yǒude shíhou  
fāshēng shuǐzāi ma?

Do you sometimes have  
floods here?

B: Wǒmen zhèige dìqū zài  
Jiěfàng qián chángcháng  
fāshēng hànzāi, shuǐzāi.

Before Liberation this  
area of land often  
had droughts and floods.

Note on No. 7

fāshēng: 'to happen, to occur, to arise'. This verb is often used in connection with unpleasant things: fāshēng wèntí, 'a problem arises', fāshēng kùnnan, 'difficulties occur', fāshēng chēhuò, 'a car accident happens'. Notice that in these examples the subject in the Chinese is indefinite and follows the verb. As you may remember, in sentences with verbs indicating appearance or disappearance of something, that is the coming of something onto the scene or the leaving of something from the scene, the indefinite subject always follows the verb. (See also Note No. 2 in Meeting Unit 7.)

8. B: Yǐqián tǔrǎng yě bù hǎo.

In the past the soil was not  
good either.

9. A: Nèige shíhou měi gōngqǐng  
tǔdì shēngchǎn duōshao  
liángshi?

How much grain did each  
hectare of land produce  
at that time?

B: Měi gōngqǐng tǔdì  
píngjūn yīnián zhǐ  
shēngchǎn bābǎi gōng-  
jīn zuǒyòude liángshi.

Each hectare of land on the  
average only produced about  
800 kilograms of grain per  
year.

Notes on No. 9

píngjūn: 'on the average'. Notice the word order in the answer:

SUBJECT	ADVERBS	VERB	MODIFIERS OF OBJECT	OBJECT
Měi gōngqǐng tǔdì	píngjūn yì- nián zhǐ	shēngchǎn	800 gōngjīn zuǒyòude	liángshi

The adverbial phrase with píngjūn may also occur at the beginning of the sentence:

ADVERBS	SUBJECT	VERB	MODIFIERS OF OBJECT	OBJECT
Qùnián píngjūn	měi gōngqǐng tǔdì	shēngchǎn	7000duō gōngjīn	liángshi

gōngqǐng: 'hectare (approximately 2 1/2 acres)' Here are the metric terms for measurement of area in Chinese:

píngfāng mǐ	square meter (See Unit 7)
gōngmǔ	are, 100 sq. meters (not taught in this module)
gōngqǐng	hectare, 100 ares
píngfāng gōnglǐ	square kilometer, 100 hectares

10. B: Jiěfàng yǐhòu, tāmen  
xiūjiànle shuǐkù.

After Liberation, they  
constructed a reservoir.

11. B: Xiànzài de shēngchǎn  
děngyú Jiěfàng  
yǐqián de bābèi duō.

Now the production is equal  
to more than eight times the  
production before Liberation.

Note on No. 11

-bèi: 'times, -fold' The syllable -bèi is used after a number to show multiples of an amount, as in:

sānbèi	three times
shíbèi	ten times
yībǎibèi	one hundred times

Amounts with -bèi can occur in two different patterns. One pattern expresses comparison; an example is Liù bǐ sān dà yíbèi, 'Six is twice as much as three'. The other pattern expresses equivalence and uses the verb shì, yǒu or děngyú; for example, Liù shì sānde liǎngbèi, 'Six is two times three'. The interpretation of a sentence



with -bèi depends on which pattern is used. For example, if you use sānbèi in a comparison sentence, the meaning is 'the base amount plus three times the base amount', or in other words 'four times'. If you use sānbèi in an equivalence sentence, the meaning is 'three times'.

(comparison) Tā (bǐ wǒ) dà sānbèi. He is four times as old (as I).  
(Literally, 'He is older by three times')

(equivalence) Tā yǒu wǒde sānbèi nàme dà. He is three times as old as I.

The comparison sentence Tā bǐ wǒ dà yíběi, 'He is twice as old as I am', thus means the same thing as the equivalence sentence Tā yǒu wǒde liǎngbèi nàme dà.

Here are some more examples:

#### Comparison

Tāde shū bǐ wǒde duō yíběi.	He has twice as many books as I.
Tāde diànshì bǐ wǒde dà yíběi.	His television is twice as big as mine.
Tāde zhuōzi bǐ wǒde cháng yíběi.	His table is twice as long as mine.
Tāde shūjiàzi bǐ wǒde gāo liǎngbèi.	His bookcase is three times as tall as mine.
Tāde chènshān bǐ wǒde duō sānbèi.	He has four times as many shirts as I.

#### Equivalence

Notice that in this pattern if -bèi is followed by an adjectival verb, the adjectival verb may be preceded by nàme, which does not change the meaning significantly.

Liù shì sānde liǎngbèi.	6 is two times 3.
Wǒde shūjiàzi yǒu tāde liǎngbèi (nàme) gāo.	My bookcase is twice as tall as his.
Jīntian màide shūcài dēngyú zuótiande liǎngbèi.	(said by one food distributor to another) I sold twice as many vegetables today as yesterday.

12. B: Nèige gōngshè hái yǒu yíge huàféichǎng hé yíge nóngyàochǎng.

That commune also has a chemical fertilizer factory and an agricultural pesticide factory.

13. A: Zhèige gōngshè jīxièhuàde  
qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng?

What is the situation re-  
garding mechanization  
on this commune?

B: Wǒmen yǐjīng shíxíng  
nóngyè jīxièhuà.

We have already put agricultural  
mechanization into effect.

Note on No. 13

jīxièhuà: 'to mechanize' Jīxiè is the word for 'machinery',  
and -huà is the syllable which corresponds to '-ize' or 'make into'.

(This is a talk given to a group of foreign visitors by a representative of the commune.)

Wǒmende gōngshe jiào  
Hóngqí Rénmín Gōngshè. Shì  
yíge 'Nóngyè Xué Dàzhài' de  
xiānjīn dānwèi. Quán  
gōngshède rénkǒu yígòng yǒu  
sìwànwǔqiānliùbǎicǐshísānge  
rén. Tudi miànji jiùshì  
píngfāng gōnglǐ. Gōngshède  
zūzhi fēn sānjí: gōngshè  
xiàtóu yǒu liùge shēngchǎn  
dàduì, shēngchǎn dàduì xiàtóu  
yǒu qīshíèrge shēngchǎnduì.  
Wǒmen gōngshè zhǔyào shì shēng-  
chǎn liángshí, yě shēngchǎn  
shuǐguo, shūcài, hái yǒu  
yāzi, zhū hé yú.

Wǒmen zhèige dìqū zài  
Jiěfàng qián chángcháng yǒu  
hánzāi, shuǐzāi. Tǔrǎng yě  
bù hǎo. Měi gōngqǐng tudi  
píngjūn yīnián zhǐ shēngchǎn  
bābǎi gōngjīn zuǒyòude liángshí.  
Jiěfàng yǐhòu, wǒmen xiūjiànle  
shuǐkù. Shēngchǎn yīnián bǐ  
yīnián hǎo. Xiànzài píngjūn  
měinián yì gōngqǐng tudi kéyì  
shēngchǎn liùqiānbābǎiwúshíduō  
gōngjīn liángshí, dēngyú Jiěfàng  
yìqiándè bābèiduō. Xiànzài  
wǒmen zhèige gōngshè yǐjīng yǒu  
yíge huàféichāng, hé yíge  
nóngyàochāng.

Jiěfàng yǐqián wǒmen  
zhèige dìfang zhǐ yǒu sìge  
xiǎoxué, méiyǒu zhōngxué.  
Xiànzài yǒu shíjiǔge  
xiǎoxué, liùge zhōngxué.

Our commune is called  
the Red Flag People's Commune.  
It is an advanced unit which 'In  
Agriculture LEarns From Tachai'.  
The whole commune's population  
is 45,673 people. The land area  
is 90 square kilometers. The  
organization of the commune  
is divided into three levels:  
under the commune are six  
production brigades, and under  
the six production brigades are  
72 production teams. Our  
commune mainly produces grain,  
but it also produces fruit and  
vegetables, as well as ducks,  
pigs, and fish.

Before Liberation, this  
area of land often had droughts  
or floods. The soil was not  
good, either. Each hectare of  
land on the average produced  
only about 800 kilograms of  
grain year. After liberation we  
constructed a reservoir. The  
production gets greater year by  
year. Now each hectare of land  
can produce on the average more  
than 6,850 kilograms of grain a year,  
which is equal to more than  
eight times the production  
before Liberation. This commune  
now has a chemical fertilizer  
factory and an agricultural  
pesticide factory.

Before Liberation, we only  
had four primary schools and no  
middle schools here. Now there  
are nineteen primary schools  
and six middle schools.

Xiànzài wǒmen zuì  
zhōngyào de gōngzuò jiù  
shì zěnmeyàng zǎo yídiǎr  
shíxíng quán xiàn nóngyè  
jīxièhuà.

Right now our most  
important work is how to  
put agricultural mechan-  
ization into effect for  
the entire county as  
soon as possible.

Unit 5, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise a representative of the Red Flag People's Commune welcomes a group of American visitors to the commune and gives them some information about it.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you might want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 122 as you listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

shèyuán	commune personnel
shēnghuó	life
fùyè	side-line occupation
yǎng	to raise, to care for
yáng	sheep
miànfěn chǎng	flour factory
zhòng	to plant, to grow
'kào tiān chí fàn'	'dependent on Heaven for food'
lǐngdǎo	to lead
jiǎndān	to be simple

Exercise 3

In this exercise you will hear a conversation in which a representative of the Red Flag Commune asks the American visitor some questions about the situation of American farm villages.

Listen to the conversation straight through, then listen a second time and turn to page 122 and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

nóngcūn	farm village
nóngchǎng	a farm
zhǎngdà	to grow up
màizi	wheat
zhòng	to plant, to grow
yùmǐ	corn
gōngshēng	liter
nóngmángde shíhou	the agricultural busy season
qīnqi	relatives
bāngmáng	to help (required Unit 2)
gù	to hire
yǎng	to raise, to care for
nǎiniú	dairy cow
zǒngde lái shuō	on the whole
shìhé	to suit, to fit
zhàn	to occupy a space; to constitute a portion or an amount
chūkǒu	to export

Note: In this conversation you will hear a new usage of the verb zhàn, 'to occupy a space or area'. Here the verb zhàn is used to mean 'to occupy a proportion of an amount'.

Nóngyè rénkǒu zhǐ zhàn quán  
guó rénkǒude bǎifēn zhī sì.

The agricultural population is only  
four percent of the whole population

Percentage is expressed by the phrase bǎifēn zhī ..., '... of one hundred parts'. You'll learn more about this in Unit 8.

#### Exercise 4

In this exercise a foreign visitor talks with a commune member about

different aspects of a commune: its size, agricultural products, and the educational aspect.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then on the second time through answer the questions found on page 123.

For this exercise you will need the following new words and phrases:

lǐngdǎo	to lead
gǎiliáng	to improve
shèyuán	commune personnel
zìliúdì	private plot of land
dòuzi	beans
hào zhào	to issue a call
yǎng	to raise, to care for
zhòng	to grow, to raise
zhīnèi	within
pǔjí	to popularize
chéngjì	achievement
nǚlì	to be industrious

### Exercise 5

This exercise gives you a chance to work on your understanding of amounts with -bèi. It does not occur on the tape. Do it on your own before class. Be sure you have read and understood the note on the use of -bèi (Unit 5, Note on No. 11) before attempting this exercise.

Given the proportions stated in each sentence in the first column, and the quantities specified in the second column, calculate the figure for the third column.

1. Wǒde qián shì tāde qiánde liǎngbèi.	Tā yǒu wǔkuai qián,	wǒ yǒu ____ kuai.
2. Wǒde qián shì tāde qiánde sānbèi.	Wǒ yǒu liùkuai qián,	tā yǒu ____ kuai.
3. Zhèikuài dìde miànji děngyú nèikuài dìde liǎngbèi.	Zhèikuài dì yǒu 20 píngfāng gōngchǐ,	nèikuài dì yǒu ____ píngfāng gōngchǐ.
4. Tāde qián bǐ wǒde duō sānbèi.	Wǒ yǒu yíkuai qián,	tā yǒu ____ kuai.

5. Jīntian màide cài děngyú zuótiande liǎngbèi.	Zuótian màile 300 gōngjīn cài,	jīntian màile _____ gōngjīn cài.
6. Zhèizhāng zhuōzi yǒu nèizhāngde liǎngbèi nàme cháng.	Nèizhāng zhuōzi yǒu 3 chǐ cháng,	zhèizhāng yǒu _____ chǐ cháng.
7. Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào bǐ nǐ jiā yuǎn yībèi.	Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào yǒu èr lǐ dì,	nǐ jiā lí xuéxiào cái _____ lǐ dì.
8. Zhèibǎ yūsǎn bǐ nèibǎ yūsǎn guì liǎngbèi.	Zhèibǎ yūsǎn 12 kuai,	nèibǎ cái _____ kuai.
9. Nèige hóng yánsède chènshān bǐ lánde guì yībèi.	Hóng yánsède 16 kuai,	lán yánsède cái _____ kuai.

Answers for this exercise can be found on page 130 .

### Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What are the group of American visitors visiting? (Why do they make a visit to this place?)
2. This representative says that the commune was established in 1958. Throughout the years it has achieved a certain status. What does he say the commune is now?
3. What is the population of the commune?
4. What occurred before Liberation that no longer occurs now in the commune?
5. What do the Americans learn about commune organization?
6. How does present day commune production compare with production before Liberation?

After answering these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation found on page 124 . You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will



be able to give them orally in class.

1. Did the American grow up on the farm? If not, how does he know about the farm situation?
2. What sort of farm did the American work on? Was it a small farm? Did the farm produce only one product? If not, can you name the products they grew on the farm?
3. How many workers were on the farm? Were these people hired?
4. How large is the farm?
5. Were the vegetables the farm produced sold or did the farm members eat them all?
6. In America are there problems in agricultural development?

After having answered these questions yourself, look at the translation for the conversation on page 126, then listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

#### Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. How large is the commune?
2. Why couldn't the commune members grow things before on the commune?
3. Does all the land belong to the commune or are there also private plots of land.
4. What does the call 'a pig for every person' mean and who issued it?
5. Do the children on the commune all go to school? Is there only one school? Who attends classes?

After answering these questions, look at the translation for the dialogue and listen to it once again to help you prepare your answers.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

M: Wǒ xiān jièshào yíxià. Wǒmen gōngshè jiào Lǒngqí Rénmín Gōngshè. Wǒ shì Wáng Jiànguó. Jīntian yǒu Měiguó péngyou lái wǒmen gōngshè cānguān, wǒmen hěn huānyíng, xīwang nǐmen xiǎng kànde dōu néng kàndào.

I will first make some brief introductory comments. Our commune is called the Red Flag People's Commune. I'm Wang Jianguo. We welcome our American friends who have come to visit our commune today, and hope that you will be able to see everything you would like to see.

F: Xièxie. Wǒmen hěn gāoxìng jīntian yǒu jīhuì lái nǐmen gōngshè cānguān. Wǒmen xīwang liáojiè nǐmen gōngshè shì zěnmé zǔzhǐde. Yě xīwang liáojiè nǐmende shēngchǎn qíngkuàng hé shèyuánde shēnghuó qíngkuàng.

Thank you. We're very happy to have the chance to come to your commune to visit today. We hope to understand how your commune is organized, and we also hope to understand your production situation and the way the commune personnel live.

M: Hǎo. Wǒ jiù jièshào yíxià. Wǒmen gōngshè shì Yíjiùwǔbānián chénglǐde. Xiànzài shì yíge 'Nóngyè Xué Dàzhài' de xiānjìn dānwèi. Quán shè rénkou yíngōng yǒu sānwānbāqiānqībǎiliùshíjiǔge rén. Gōngshède zǔzhǐ fēn sānjí. Gōngshè xiàtóu yǒu wǔge shēngchǎn dàduì. Wǔge shēngchǎn dàduì xiàtóu yǒu liùshíge shēngchǎnduì. Wǒmen gōngshè zhǔyào shì shēngchǎn liángshí. Kěshì fùyè shēngchǎn yě bù shǎo. Wǒmen yāng niú, yāng yāng, yāng zhū, yāng jī. Wǒmen hái zhòngle hěn duō shuǐguǒ. Wǒmen hái yǒu yíge huàféichǎng, hé yíge miànfēnchǎng. Jiěfàng yǐqián wǒmen zhèige dìfang xià yǔ duōde shíhou jiù fāshēng shuǐzāi, bú xià yǔde shíhou jiù yǒu hànzāi, zhǐ néng 'kào tiān chí fàn'. Jiěfàng yǐhòu Gōngchǎndǎng lǐngdǎo wǒmen xiūjiànle shuǐkù. Xiànzài hěn shǎo fāshēng shuǐzāi hé hànzāi le. Xiànzài yòu yǒule huàféichǎng.

All right. I'll tell you a little about it. Our commune was established in 1958. Now it is an advanced unit which 'In Agriculture Learns from Tachai'. The population of the whole commune is 38,769 people altogether. The commune is organized into three levels. Under the commune are five production brigades. Under the five production brigades are sixty production teams. Our commune mainly produces grain, but we have quite a bit of side-line production too. We raise cows, sheep, pigs and chickens, we also have planted a lot of fruit. We also have a chemical fertilizer plant and a flour factory. Before Liberation when it rained a lot in this area floods would occur, when it didn't rain there were droughts and we could only 'depend on Heaven for food'. After Liberation, the Communist Party led us in building a reservoir. Now flood and droughts hardly ever happen anymore. Moreover, now we have the chemical fertilizer plant.

Wǒmende liángshì shēngchǎn  
yìnián bǐ yìnián duō. Qùnián  
píngjūn měi gōngqǐng tǔdì  
shēngchǎn qīqiānduō gōngjīn,  
děngyú Jiěfàng qián de qībèi.  
...Hǎo, wǒ jiù jiǎndānde  
jièshào dào zhèlǐ. Dèng  
nǐmen cānguān yǐhòu, yǒu  
shenme wèntí hái kěyǐ tíchū-  
lai. Wǒmen zài tántán.

F: Hǎo, hǎo.

M: Nàme xiānzài jiù qù kànkàn ba.

Our grain production is greater  
and greater every year. Last  
year, on the average, every  
hectare of land produced over  
seven thousand kilos, or seven  
times the production before  
Liberation. ...All right, I'll  
end my simple introduction here.  
After you have visited, if  
you have any questions you  
can still bring them up.  
We'll talk some more.

Fine.

Then let's go have a look now.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

- F: Nǐ cānguānle wǒmende gōngshè, liáojiēle wǒmen nóngcūnde qíngkuàng, wǒmen keyi bu keyi wēnwēn nǐ Měiguó nóngcūnde qíngkuàng?
- Now that you have visited our commune and understand the situation of our farm village, may we ask you about the situation of American farm villages?
- M: Hǎo, wǒmen tántan. Wǒ suǐrán bú shì zài nóngchǎng zhǎngdàde, kěshì zài yíge nóngchǎngshang gōngzuòguo. Wǒ zhīdao yìxiē Měiguó nóngchǎngde qíngkuàng.
- Okay, let's talk about that. Although I didn't grow up on a farm, I have worked on a farm. I know a little about the situation on American farms.
- F: Nǐ gōngzuòguode nóngchǎng shì shénme yàngde nóngchǎng a? Nèige nóngchǎng zhòng shénme?
- What kind of farm was the one that you worked on? What did they grow there?
- M: Nèige nóngchǎng zhǔyào shì shēngchǎn liángshi. Tāmen zhòng màizi hé yùmǐ, shénmede. Lìngwài hái zhòng shūcài.
- They mainly produced grain. They grew wheat and corn and so forth. In addition they also grew vegetables.
- F: Nèige nóngchǎng yǒu duō dà?
- How big was the farm?
- M: Dàgài yǒu èrshíbā gōngqǐng.
- It was about 28 hectares.
- F: Měi gōngqǐng shēngchǎn duōshao liángshi?
- How much grain did each hectare produce?
- M: Měi gōngqǐng shēngchǎn yìqiānsìbǎi gōngshēng màizi, měi gōngqǐng shēngchǎn sìqiānsānbǎiqǐshiwǔ gōngshēng yùmǐ.
- Each hectare produced 1400 liters of wheat, and 4,375 liters of corn.
- F: Nóngchǎngshang yǒu duōshao gōngzuò rényuán?
- How many workers were there on the farm?
- M: Nèige nóngchǎng shì yíge jiātingde nóngchǎng. Zài Měiguó hěn duō nóngchǎng dōu shì zhèiyàngde. Yìjiā rén dōu zài nóngchǎng gōngzuò. Wǒ gōngzuòguode nèige nóngchǎng yǒu fùqīn, mǔqīn, bāge érzi hé nǚér. Tāmen dōu zài nóngchǎng gōngzuò. Dào nóngmángde shíhou, qīnqī lái bāngmáng. Yǒu shíhou yě gù yìliǎngge rén.
- It was a family farm. In America a lot of farms are like that. The whole family works on the farm. The farm I worked on had a father, a mother, and eight sons and daughters. They all worked on the farm. When the busy season came, their relatives would come and help. Sometimes they would hire one or two people, too.

- F: Shēngchǎn dōu jīxièhuà le ma? Was the production all mechanized?
- M: Shìde. Wǒmen yòng hěn duō jīqì. Yes. We used a lot of machines.
- F: Nǐ shuōle nǐmen yě zhòng shūcài. Nǐ shuōle nǐmen yě zhòng shūcài. Shi wèi zìjǐ chī háishi wèi mài? You said that you also grew vegetables. Was it for yourselves to eat or was it to sell?
- M: Zhǔyào shì wèi zìjǐ chī. Duōchulaide jiù mài. It was mainly for ourselves to eat. Any surplus we would sell.
- F: Nǐmen nóngchǎng yě yǎng niú, yǎng zhū, yǎng jī shenmede ma? Did you also raise cows, pigs, chickens, and so on?
- M: Duì. Wǒmen yǎng nǎiniú. Wǒmen yě yǎng jī, shēngchǎn jīdàn. Yes. We raised dairy cows. We also raised chickens and produced eggs.
- F: Nǐmen yǒu shuǐzāi, hànzāide wèntí ma? Did you have problems of flooding and drought?
- M: Dāngrán wǒmen hái yǒu shuǐzāi, hànzāide wèntí, kěshì méiyǒu shenme dà wèntí. Zǒngde lái shuō, Měiguó hěn duō dìfang qīhòu hěn shìhé nóngyè. Kéyǐ shuō nóngyè hěn fādá. Of course we still had flooding and drought problems, but there wasn't any large problem. Generally speaking a lot of places in America have climates suitable to agriculture. One can say that agriculture is very developed.
- F: Měiguó nóngyè rénkǒu yǒu duōshao? What is the agricultural population of the United States?
- M: Wǒmen nóngyè rénkǒu zhǐ zhàn quánguó rénkǒude bǎifēn zhī sì, kěshì shēngchǎnchulaide liángshí sānfēn zhī wǒ jiù gòu quán guó rén chī le. Hái yǒu sānfēn zhī èr kēyǐ chūkǒu. Our agricultural population only makes up four percent of the population of the whole country, but one-third of the grain produced is enough to feed the whole country and there is still two-thirds which can be exported.
- F: E. Hěn hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng zài nóngyè fāngmiàn wǒmen yǒu hěn duō dìfang kēyǐ xiàng nǐmen xuéxí. Ah. Very good. I think we have a lot to learn from you in the area of agriculture.
- M: Bú yào kèqì. Wǒmen yě yǒu hěn duō dìfang kēyǐ xiàng nǐmen xuéxí. Thank you. We also have a lot we can learn from you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

- F: Nǐmen gōngshè miànji duó dà?  
Tǔrǎng hǎo bu hǎo?
- M: Wǒmen gōngshè miànji yí gòng  
bāshiwǔ píngfāng gōnglǐ.  
Jiěfàng yǐqián tǔrǎng hěn  
bù hǎo. Jiěfàng yǐhòu Gōng-  
chǎndǎng lǐngdǎo wǒmen  
gǎiliáng tǔrǎng. Xiànzài  
wǒmen kěyǐ zhòng hěn duō  
yǐqián bù néng zhòngde  
dōngxi.
- F: Tīngshuō nǐmen shèyuán xiànzài  
hái yǒu zìliúdì. Shèyuán zài  
zìliúdìshàng zhòng xiē shénme?
- M: Zhǔyào zhòngde shì shūcài. Yě  
zhòng xiē dòuzi. Rúguo zìjǐ  
chībùwán kěyǐ mài. Búguò  
xiànzài Gōngchǎndǎng hàozhào  
'yì rén yì zhū'. Shèyuán  
yǎng zhū yě yào zhòng yìxiē  
zhū chīde dōngxi.
- F: Guānyu jiàoyu fāngmiàn de qíng-  
kuàng zěnmeyàng? Háizimen  
dōu shàng xué ma? Cóng duó dà  
kāishǐ shàng xué?
- M: Háizimen cóng liùsuì kāishǐ shàng  
xué. Nán hái, nǚ hái dōu  
shàng xué. Wǒmen gōngshè yí gòng  
yǒu shíbāge xiǎoxué, wǔge zhōng-  
xué. Wǒmen jìhua zài wǔnián zhī  
nèi pǔjí zhōngxué jiàoyu.
- How large is your commune?  
Is the soil good?
- Altogether our commune is 85  
square kilometers in area.  
Before Liberation the soil  
was very bad. After Liberation  
the Communist Party led us  
in improving the soil. Now  
we can grow many things which  
we couldn't grow before.
- I hear that your commune members  
also have private plots of  
land now. What do the commune  
members grow on the private  
plots of land?
- They grow mainly vegetables. They  
also grow beans. If they can't  
eat everything themselves, they  
can sell some. But now the  
Communist Party has issued the  
call 'a pig for every person'.  
If the commune members raise  
pigs, then they must also grow  
food for the pigs to eat.
- What's the situation like in the  
area of education? Do the  
children all go to school?  
At what age do they begin  
school?
- The children begin school at the  
age of six. Both boys and girls  
go to school. Altogether our  
commune has eighteen elementary  
schools and five middle schools.  
We plan to make middle school  
education available to all in  
five years.

F: Wǒ zhīdao yǐqián nǐmen jiàoyu  
bù pǔjí. Xiànzài yǒule zhènme  
duō xuéxiào. Nǐmen zuòle hěn  
duō shì. Chéngjì hěn dà.

I know that before, your education  
was not available to all. Now  
there are so many schools. You  
have done a lot. Your achieve-  
ments are great.

M: Wǒmen zuòle yìxiē shì. Kěshi  
zuòde hái bú gòu, tèbié shì  
zài nóngyè jīxièhuà fāng-  
miàn. Wǒmen xūyào zài nǚlì.  
yíding yào bǎ wǒmende gōng-  
shè jiànshècheng yíge gèng  
hǎode gōngshè.

We have done a few things. But  
we still haven't done enough,  
especially in the area of  
agricultural mechanization.  
We need to do some more hard  
work and definitely build our com-  
mune into an even better commune.

F: Wǒ xiǎng nǐmen yíding hěn kuài  
jiù keyi zuòdào le.

I'm sure you'll be able to do  
it very soon.

Answers for Exercise 5

1. 10

2. 2

3. 10

4. 4

5. 600

6. 6

7. 1

8. 4

9. 8



Unit 6, Reference List

1. A: Zhèrde shèyuán shēngle  
bìng, zěnmè bān?  
B: Zhèige gōngshè yǒu yíge  
wèishēngyuán.
2. B: Měige shēngchǎn dàduì  
yǒu yíge wèishēngsuǒ.
3. B: Měige shēngchǎnduì yǒu  
yíge wèishēngshì.
4. B: Zài wèishēngshìlǐ yǒu  
chìjiǎo yīshēng gěi  
shèyuán kàn bìng.
5. A: Tīngshuō Jiěfàng yǐhòu,  
nǐmèn jīngguole hěn  
duō cìde yùndòng.  
B: Shǒuxiān shì Yījiūsìjiǔ-  
nián dào Yījiǔwǔyīniánde  
Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng.
6. B: Jiěfàng yǐqián hěn duō  
nóngmín méiyǒu  
tǔdì.
7. B: Tāmen zūzhòng dìzhǔde tǔdì,  
shǒudào dìzhǔde bōxuē  
hé yāpò.
- What do you do when a  
member of the commune  
gets sick?  
This commune has a  
hospital.  
Each production brigade  
has a health clinic.  
Each production team has  
a health room.  
In the health room  
there is a 'barefoot  
doctor' who examines and  
treats commune personnel.  
I've heard that after the  
Liberation, you went  
through many different  
movements.  
First was the Land Reform  
Movement from 1949 to  
1951.  
Before the Liberation,  
many farmers had no  
land.  
They rented the landlord's  
land to farm, and suf-  
fered the exploitation  
and oppression of the  
landlords.

8. B: Jiěfàng yǐhòu, jìnxíngle  
Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng,  
xiǎomièle dìzhūde  
bōxuē hé yāpò.
- After the Liberation, the  
Land Reform Movement  
was carried out, and  
the landlords' exploi-  
tation and oppression  
were wiped out.
9. A: Nǐmen shì zěnmè xiǎomiè  
dìzhūde bōxuē hé yāpòde?
- How did you do away with  
the landlords' exploita-  
tion and oppression?
- B: Zhèngfǔ bǎ dìzhūde dì dōu  
mōshōule, fēngēi nóngmín.
- The government confiscated  
the landlords' land and  
divided it among the  
farmers.
10. A: Dào Yījiǔwǔyīnián shì bu  
shì zài quán guó dōu  
jìnxíngle Tǔdì Gǎigé  
Yùndòng?
- Was the Land Reform Movement  
carried out completely  
throughout the whole  
country by 1951?
- B: Dào Yījiǔwǔyīnián chūle  
Xīzàng yǐwài, jībēnshàng  
dōu jìnxíngle Tǔdì  
Gǎigé Yùndòng.
- By 1951, except for Tibet,  
the Land Reform Movement  
had been basically  
carried out.
11. A: Yījiǔwǔyīnián yǐhòu hái yǒu  
shénme yùndòng?
- After 1951 what other  
movements were there?
- B: Yījiǔwǔsānnián wǒmen kāishǐ  
gāo Nóngyè Hézuòhuà  
Yùndòng.
- In 1953 we began the  
Agricultural Cooper-  
ativization Movement.
12. A: Shénme shì Nóngyè  
Hézuòhuà Yùndòng?
- What was the Agricultural  
Cooperativization  
Movement?
- B: Jiù shì hào zhào  
nóngmín zūzhìqilai  
fāzhǎn shēngchǎn.
- It summoned the farmers  
to organize together  
to develop production.
13. B: Nèige shíhou yǒu le  
hùhùzǔ.
- At that time there were  
mutual aid teams.
14. B: Bù jiǔ yǐhòu, yǒu  
fāzhǎnchéng chūjī  
nóngyè hézuòsǎn.
- Not long after that they  
developed into elementary  
agricultural cooperatives.

15. B: Dào Yījiǔwǔliùnián yòu  
fāzhǎnchéng gāojí  
nóngyè hézuòshè.

By 1956 they developed again,  
into advanced agricultural  
cooperatives.

16. A: Chūjí nóngyè hézuòshè  
hé gāojí nóngyè  
hézuòshè zhūyàode  
qūbié zài nǎr?

What is the main difference  
between elementary agri-  
cultural cooperatives  
and advanced agricultural  
cooperatives?

B: Chūjí nóngyè hézuòshède  
shíhou, tǔdì yě fēnhóng.  
Gāojí nóngyèshè tǔdì  
bù fēnhóng.

When there were elementary agri-  
cultural cooperatives, the  
profit from the land was dis-  
tributed. For advanced agri-  
cultural cooperatives, the  
profits from the land were  
not distributed.

17. B: Duō láo duō dé.

The more you work  
the more you get.

18. B: Zhèiyang jiù gèng néng  
fāhuī nóngmínde  
shēngchǎn jījǐxìng.

In this way, they were  
able to stimulate  
development of the  
people's enthusiasm  
for production even  
more.

- (Not on tape) -

19. zhòng

to plant, to grow

Vocabulary

bōxuē	to exploit; exploitation
chījiǎo chījiǎo yīsheng chūjí	barefoot, to go barefoot 'barefoot doctor' beginning stage, elementary level
dé dìzhǔ	to get, to obtain landlord
fāhuī fāzhǎn fēngēi fēnhóng	to cause to develop, to stimulate to develop, to grow, to expand to give a share to to distribute profits
gǎigé gāo gāojí	to reform; reform to do advanced stage, high level
hào zhào hézuò huà hézuò shè hù zhù zǔ	to summon, to call to duty to put into cooperatives a cooperative mutual aid team/group
jīběn shàng	fundamentally, mainly, basically
jījī xīng jìn xíng	enthusiasm, initiative to carry out, to do
láo	to labor
mòshōu	to confiscate
nóngmín Nóngyè Hézuò huà Yùndòng	farmer, peasant Agricultural Cooperativization Movement
qūbié	difference
shèyuán shòudào	commune personnel to undergo, to be the object of to suffer
shǒuxiān	first, at first
Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng	Land Reform Movement

wèishēngshì  
wèishēngsuǒ  
wèishēngyuàn

xiāomiè  
Xīzàng

yāpò  
yùndòng

zhèngfǔ  
zhōng  
zūzhōng

health room  
health clinic  
hospital

to destroy, to wipe out, to uproot  
Tibet

to oppress; oppression  
movement

government  
to plant, to grow  
to rent for farming

Unit 6, Reference Notes

1. A: Zhèrde shèyuán shēngle  
bīng, zěnme bàn?                      What do you do when a member  
of the commune gets sick?
- B: Zhèige gōngshè yǒu yíge  
wèishēngyuán.                      This commune has a  
hospital.

Notes on No. 1

shèyuán: 'commune member, commune personnel' Shèyuán refers to not only the working commune members, but also children, older people, and any other non-working family members.

wèishēngyuán: 'hospital' You've also seen another word for hospital, yīyuán. In the PRC both words are used. A hospital which is called yīyuán is funded totally by government money. A hospital which is called wèishēngyuán is funded for the most part (perhaps 2/3) by money other than from the government. A wèishēngyuán is equivalent to a small yīyuán. Usually a wèishēngyuán is found on a commune, but some factories may also have them.

2. B: Měige shēngchǎn dàduì  
yǒu yíge wèishēngsuǒ.                      Each production brigade  
has a clinic.

Note on No.2

wèishēngsuǒ: 'health clinic' A health clinic has a staff of three or four people. It has emergency care facilities. It will have a few beds where people stay temporarily before being moved to the wèishēngyuán. Health clinics are almost totally supported by commune money.

3. B: Měige shēngchǎnduì yǒu  
yíge wèishēngshì.                      Each production team has a  
health room.

Note on No. 3

wèishēngshì: 'health room' This is simply a room where the 'barefoot doctor' can administer medicines and give other first-aid treatment.

4. B: Zài wèishēngshìli yǒu  
chījiǎo yīsheng gěi  
shèyuán kàn bìng.

In the health room there is  
a 'barefoot doctor' who  
examines and treats commune  
personnel.

Note on No. 4

chījiǎo yīsheng: 'barefoot doctor' The plan for 'barefoot doctors' came about during the Cultural Revolution. The idea was to make medical services more available in rural areas with a minimum of expense and formality. Many of the 'barefoot doctors' have only a primary school education, some of them have attended only anti-illiteracy classes, and others are high school graduates sent from the cities. All of them receive between two and four months of training in the commune's wèishēngyuán.

'Barefoot doctors' have a limited training in Western medical practices. They make much greater use of Chinese traditional medicines and medical practices, and of acupuncture.

The 'barefoot doctors' attached to each commune's production teams are not relieved from doing actual productive work. They take their first-aid kits out into the fields with them to labor.

5. A: Tīngshuō Jiěfàng yǐhòu,  
nǐmen jīngguole hěn  
duō cìde yùndòng.

I've heard that after the  
Liberation, you went through  
many different movements.

B: Shǒuxiān shì Yījiūsìjiǔ-  
nián dào Yījiūwǔyīnián de  
Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng.

First was the Land Reform  
Movement from 1949 to  
1951.

Note on No. 5

shǒuxiān: 'at first, first of all' Shǒuxiān is an adverb and is found in two places in the sentence, either before or after the subject.

Shǒuxiān wǒmen yào tántan  
nǐde cānguān fāngwèn jìhua.

First let's talk about your  
plans for touring and visiting.

Dào Zhōngguó nánbù qùde  
shíhou, wǒmen shǒuxiān  
yào ānpai yìxia nǐ yào  
fāngwènde dìqū.

When we go to southern China,  
we first of all want to  
arrange what regions you'd  
like to visit.

6. B: Jiěfàng yǐqián hěn duō  
nóngmín méiyǒu  
tǔdì. Before Liberation, many  
farmers had no  
land.

Note on No. 6

nóngmín: 'farmer, peasant' This word can be used to refer to all farmers in China, but when referring to American farmers, the term nóngyè gōngren is preferred. The use of nóngmín implies that the farmer does not own the land he works and that he works it under rather simple conditions.

7. B: Tāmen zūzhōng dìzhǔde tǔdì,  
shòudào dìzhǔde bōxuē  
hé yāpō. They rented the landlords'  
land to farm, and suffered  
the exploitation and  
oppression of the landlords.

Notes on No. 7

zūzhōng: 'to rent for farming' This compound verb (zū 'to rent' plus zhōng 'to grow') is a fairly new addition to the language. It is used often in language which has an official flavor.

shòudào: 'to undergo, to be the object of, to suffer' (Not to be confused with shōudào, 'to receive', as in 'to receive a letter'.) The verb shòudào is often used to tell of the subject's undergoing some unpleasant experience, but is sometimes used for neutral or pleasant experiences. It often translates nicely into an English passive.

Yídào Běitǒu Shēngchǎn  
Dàduì, wǒmen jiù  
shòudaole tāmen de huānyíng.

We were welcomed by the  
Feit'ou Production  
Brigade as soon as we  
arrived there.

Fāshēng le wèntí yǐhòu  
zhèi jǐ ge rén shòudào  
zhèngfǔ de chūlǐ.

After problems arose, these  
people were dealt with  
by the government.

The verb shòudào is a compound verb made of the verb shòu, 'to undergo, to be the object of, to receive' and the verb dào, 'to arrive'. You've seen the verb dào occur before the main verb (Tā dào wèishēngsuǒ gù le.) and also as the main verb (Tā shí zuótiān dào de.), and now you see it join up with another verb to form a compound. When dào is used as part of a compound verb, one of the meanings it can have is 'to, up to'. Here are some examples.



'to, up to' (used after action verbs)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Wǒmen zuótiān niàndào<br>nǎr le?       | Where did we read up to<br>yesterday?                      |
| Bǎ zhuōzi bāndào zhèr, jiù<br>xíng le. | Move the table over here and<br>then it will be all right. |
| Wǒ tīngdao tāde shēngyīn le.           | I heard her voice.   |
| Wǒ zài jīntiānde bàoshang<br>kàndaole. | I saw it in today's paper.                                 |
| Wǒmen yìzhí tándào bànwǎ.              | We talked all the way to<br>midnight.                      |
- 
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 8. B: Jiěfàng yǐhòu, jìnxíng le<br>Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng,<br>xiāomièle dìzhūde<br>bōxuē hé yāpò. | After Liberation, the Land<br>Reform Movement was carried<br>out, and the landlords'<br>exploitation and oppression<br>were wiped out. |
| 9. A: Nǐmen shì zěnmē xiāomiè<br>dìzhūde bōxuē hé yāpòde?                                     | How did you do away with<br>the landlords' oppression<br>and exploitation?   |
| B: Zhèngfǔ bǎ dìzhūde dì dōu<br>mòshòule, fēngēi nóngmín.                                     | The government confiscated the<br>landlords' land and divided<br>it among the farmers.   |

Note on No. 9

fēngēi: 'to give a share to' This is the verb fēn, 'to divide' plus the verb gěi, 'to give'. You have already seen the verb gěi used as a full verb (Tā bǎ shū gěi mèimei le, 'He gave the book to little sister') and as a prepositional verb (Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ xiě tāde dìzhǐ, 'Please write his address for me'). Here you see gěi used with the main verb to form a compound. Here are some more examples of compound verbs with gěi.

- |                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Zhèiběn shū, wǒ sònggēi nǐ.         | I'm giving you this book.      |
| Tā bǎ tāde fángzi zūgēi<br>shéi le? | To whom did he rent his house? |

When -gēi is used in compound verbs as above, the indirect objects (the people who are the receivers of the action) must follow the verb directly. The direct objects (those things being given, rented, or divided) usually come before the verb, **either** using the prepositional

verb bǎ or placed in front of the subject.

10. A: Dào Yìjiǔwǔyīnián shì bu  
shì zài quán guó dōu  
jìnxíngle Tǔdì Gǎigé  
Yùndòng? Was the Land Reform Movement  
carried out completely  
throughout the whole country  
by 1951?
- B: Dào Yìjiǔwǔyīnián chūle  
Xīzàng yīwài, jībenshang  
dōu jìnxíngle Tǔdì  
Gǎigé Yùndòng. By 1951, except for Tibet, the  
Land Reform Movement had  
been basically carried out.

Note on No. 10

chūle ... yīwài: As you may remember, this pattern is used to express the idea of 'except for ...', 'besides ...', or 'aside from ...'. Which translation is used may depend on what adverb is used in the second part of the sentence. With yě yǒu, hái yǒu, lìngwài hái yǒu, the translation is 'beside ...', 'in addition to ...'. With jiù, dōu, or méiyǒu, the translation is 'except for ...', 'aside from ...'.

Chūle qù wǒmen jiā yīwài, yě  
kéyǐ dào tāmen jiā qu  
zuòzuò.

Besides going to our place, we  
can also go to theirs to visit.

Chūle zhōngxué yīwài, hái  
yǒu xiǎoxué hé yōuéryuán.

In addition to middle school,  
there are also primary school  
and kindergarten.

Chūle Zhōngwén shū yīwài,  
yǒu xiē biéde shū wǒ yě  
yào kàn.

Besides Chinese books, there are  
also a few other books I want  
to read.

Chūle zhèige huàféichǎng  
yīwài, lìngwài hái yǒu  
jǐge xiǎo chǎng shēngchǎn  
nóngyào.

In addition to this fertilizer  
factory, there are also a few  
other small factories which  
produce insecticides.

Chūle tā yīwài, jiù méiyǒu  
shenme biéde péngyou le.

Aside from her, I don't have  
any friends to speak of.

Chūle Lǎo Dà shì nǎhàizi  
yīwài, dōu shì nǚhàizi.

Except for the oldest one, all  
the children are girls.

Chūle Běijīng hé Guǎngzhōu  
yīwài, biéde dìfang dōu  
méiyǒu zhènme duō  
wàiguó rén.

Except for Peking and Canton,  
no place has so many foreigners.

11. A: Yījiǔwǔyīnián yǐhòu hái yǒu  
shénme yùndòng? After 1951 what other movements  
were there?
- B: Yījiǔwǔsānnián wǒmen kāishǐ  
gāo Nóngyè Hézuòhuà  
Yùndòng. In 1953 we began the Agricultural  
Cooperativization Movement.

Note on No. 11

Nóngyè Hézuòhuà Yùndòng: 'Agricultural Cooperativization Movement' This was a major step on the way to forming the people's communes in China. After the Land Reform Movement of 1950 had distributed the land to the peasants, the next step was to begin the coordination of their efforts in production. They did this in 1951 by forming mutual aid teams, also called work exchange teams. The peasants still owned their own land, plows, and livestock, but they pooled their manpower and other resources to get the work done.

In 1953 elementary agricultural cooperatives were organized by merging several mutual aid teams together. The land, tools and livestock became the property of the cooperative, but the profits from the land were distributed, not retained by the commune for investment. In 1956 when advanced agricultural cooperatives were established, the distribution of profits was abolished.

In 1958 the last step to communize China was taken. The people's communes were formed by the merging of several advanced agricultural cooperatives. What was formerly an advanced agricultural cooperative became a production brigade. The original plan for communization had called for completion in 1967. Since no major problems were encountered, the plan was completed nine years ahead of time.

12. A: Shénme shì Nóngyè  
Hézuòhuà Yùndòng? What was the Agricultural  
Cooperativization Movement?
- B: Jiù shì hào zhào nóngmín  
zǔzhīqilai fāzhǎn  
shēngchǎn. It summoned the farmers to  
organize together to  
develop production.

Notes on No. 12

hào zhào: 'to summon, to call to duty' You may also hear hào zhāo.

fā zhǎn: 'to develop' In Unit 3, you saw the adjectival verb fā dá, 'to be developed'. Now you see the action verb fā zhǎn, 'to develop'.

Zhèige dìqūde gōngyè hěn fā dá. The industry in this region is  
very well developed.

Shànghǎi shì gōngyè fāzhǎn  
zuì zǎode yíge dìqū.

Shanghai is one of the areas in  
which industry developed  
the earliest.

13. B: Nèige shíhou yǒu le  
hùzhùzǔ.

At that time there were  
mutual aid teams.

14. B: Bù jiǔ yǐhòu, yǒu  
fāzhǎnchéng chūjí  
nóngyè hézuòshè.

Not long after that they  
developed into elementary  
agricultural cooperatives.

15. B: Dào Yījiǔwǔliùnián yǒu  
fāzhǎnchéng gāojí  
nóngyè hézuòshè.

By 1956 they again developed  
into advanced agricultural  
cooperatives.

Notes on No. 14 and 15

fāzhǎnchéng: 'to develop into'. Here you see the verb chéng, 'to become' used to form a compound verb. You've seen this before in the verb liánchéng, 'to connect into'.

yòu: 'again' While the use of yòu is appropriate in the Chinese because the verb fāzhǎn is used again, the use of 'again' in the English is not, in fact, correct. A more helpful translation for this might be 'By 1956 they had developed some more, this time into advanced agricultural cooperatives'.

Yòu can even be used in situations where two different actions are talked about. In this case, yòu shows that the one action followed the other. Here, it may be translated as 'then'.

Tā shàngqu le, yòu  
xiàlai le.

She went up and then  
came down.

16. A: Chūjí nóngyè hézuòshè  
hé gāojí nóngyè  
hézuòshè zhǔyàode  
qūbié zài nǎr?

What is the main difference  
between elementary agri-  
cultural cooperatives  
and advanced agricultural  
cooperatives?

B: Chūjí nóngyè hézuòshède  
shíhou, tǔdì yě fēnhóng.  
Gāojí nóngyèshè tǔdì  
bù fēnhóng.

When there were elementary  
agricultural cooperatives,  
the profit from the land was  
distributed. For advanced  
agricultural cooperatives,  
the profits from the land  
were not distributed.

Note on No. 16

In the question above, notice the difference in word order between the Chinese and the English. Here is another example.

Zhèiběn shū hé nèiběn shūde | qūbié zài nǎr?

What is the difference | between that book and this book?

The Chinese question may also be asked another way.

Zhèiběn shū hé nèiběn shū | yǒu shénme qūbié?

What is the difference | between that book and this book?

17. B: Duō lǎo duō dé.

The more you work the more you get.

Note on No. 17

This is a set phrase in literary style. Another set phrase with the same pattern which was a political slogan in imperial days is:

Duō zuò duō cuò, shǎo zuò  
shǎo cuò, bú zuò bú cuò.

The more you do, the more your  
mistakes; the less you do, the  
fewer your mistakes; if you do  
nothing, you don't make mistakes.

If you want to express the idea of 'the more ... the more ...', use the pattern yuè ... yuè ....

Zuòde yuè duō jiù nǎde  
yuè duō.

The more you do, the more you  
receive.

18. B: Zhèiyang jiù gèng néng  
fāhuī nóngmínde shēng-  
chǎn jījíxìng.

In this way, they were able to  
stimulate development of the  
people's enthusiasm for  
production even more.

Note on No. 18

fāhuī: 'to cause to develop, to stimulate the development (of something)' Although you will sometimes see both fāhuī and fāzhǎn translated as 'develop', fāhuī has the more specialized meaning 'to develop a skill or quality'. Also, fāzhǎn can mean 'something develops' or 'to develop something', while fāhuī can only be used in this second way.

Zhèiyang jiù gèng néng fāhuī  
nóngmínde shēngchǎn jījìxìng.

In this way they developed the  
people's enthusiasm for  
production even more.

Jīnnián shì gōngnóngyè shēng-  
chǎn quán miàn fāzhǎnde  
yīnián.

This year is a year in which  
industrial and agricultural  
production developed in all  
areas.

Wèile fāzhǎn shēngchǎn tāmen  
měitiān dōu duō zuò liǎngge  
zhōngtòude shì.

In order to develop production,  
they all work two extra hours  
each day.

19. zhòng

to plant, to grow

Unit 6, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

- A: Xièxie nǐ gěi wǒ jièshào nǐmen  
gōngshède qíngkuàng. Wǒ yǒu  
jǐge wèntí kěyǐ bù kěyǐ wèn nǐ?  
Thank you for introducing me to  
the situation in your commune.  
I have a few questions, may I  
ask them?
- C: Kěyǐ, kěyǐ. Wèn shénme dōu  
huānyíng.  
Yes, yes. We welcome any questions.
- A: Wǒ hái xiǎng zhīdaode shì shèyuán  
shēngle bìng zěnmé bàn?  
What I would also like to know is  
what do you do when someone in  
the commune gets sick?
- C: Wǒmen gōngshè yǒu yíge wèishēngyuán.  
Meige shēngchǎn dàduì yǒu yíge  
wèishēngsuǒ. Meige shēngchǎnduì  
yǒu yíge wèishēngshī. Zài wèi-  
shēngshìlǐ yǒu chījiǎo yīshēng  
gěi shèyuán kàn bìng. Měi rén měi-  
nián gěi yíkuài qián jiù xíng le.  
Our commune has a hospital. Each  
production brigade has a clinic.  
Each production team has a health  
room. In the health room there  
is a 'barefoot doctor' who examines  
and treats the commune personnel.  
Each person just has to pay one  
dollar a year.
- A: Tīngshuō Jiěfàng yǐhòu, zài zǔzhi  
rénmín gōngshè yǐqián, nǐmen jīng-  
guole hěn duō cìde yùndòng. Nǐ  
néng bù néng gāosu wǒ yíxià shì  
yíxiē shénme yùndòng?  
I've heard that after Liberation,  
before the people's communes  
were organized, you went through  
many different movements. Could  
you tell me a little about what  
these movements were?
- C: Hǎo. Shǒuxiān shì 1949 nián dào  
1951 niánde Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng.  
Jiěfàng yǐqián hěn duō nóngmín  
méiyǒu tǔdì. Tāmen zūzhōng dìzhūde  
dì, shòudào dìzhūde bōxuē hé yāpò.  
Jiěfàng yǐhòu jìnxíngle Tǔdì Gǎigé  
Yùndòng, xiǎomiè le dìzhūde bōxuē  
hé yāpò.  
Sure. First was the Land Reform  
Movement from 1949 to 1951.  
Before Liberation many farmers  
had no land. They rented the  
landlord's land to farm, and then  
suffered the landlords' exploitation  
and oppression. After the Liber-  
ation, the Land Reform Movement  
was carried out, and the landlords'  
exploitation and oppression were  
wiped out.
- A: Nǐmen shì zěnmé xiǎomiè dìzhūde  
bōxuē hé yāpòde?  
How did you destroy the landlords'  
exploitation and oppression?
- C: Zhèngfǔ bǎ dìzhūde dì dōu mòshōule,  
fēngēi nóngmín. Zhèiyàng dìzhū  
jiù bù néng bōxuē hé yāpò  
nóngmín le.  
The government confiscated the  
landlords' land and divided it  
among the farmers. In this way  
the landlords could not exploit  
and oppress the farmers any more.

- A: Dào 1951 nián shì bu shì zài quán guó dōu jìnxíng le Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng?  
Was the Land Reform Movement carried out completely throughout the whole country by 1951?
- C: Shìde, dào 1951 nián chúle Xizàng yǐwài, jībenshang dōu jìnxíngle Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng.  
Yes, by 1951, except for Tibet, the Land Reform Movement had been basically carried out.
- A: 1951 nián yǐhòu hái yǒu shénme yùndòng?  
After 1951 what other movements were there?
- C: 1953 nián wǒmen kāishǐ gāo Nóngyè Hézuòhuà Yùndòng.  
In 1953 we began the Agricultural Cooperativization Movement.
- A: Shénme shì Nóngyè Hézuòhuà Yùndòng?  
What was the Agricultural Cooperativization Movement?
- C: Jiù shì hào zhào nóngmín zǔzhīqilai fāzhǎn shēngchǎn. Nèige shíhou yǒu le hùzhùzǔ. Bù jiǔ yǐhòu, yòu fāzhǎncheng chūjí nóngyè hézuòshè. Dào 1956 nián yòu fāzhǎncheng gāojí nóngyè hézuòshè.  
It summoned the peasants to organize together to develop production. At that time there were mutual aid teams. Not long after that they developed into elementary agricultural cooperatives. By 1956 they again developed into advanced agricultural cooperatives.
- A: Chūjí nóngyè hézuòshè hé gāojí nóngyè hézuòshè zhūyàode qūbié zài nǎr?  
What was the main difference between elementary agricultural cooperatives and advanced agricultural cooperatives?
- C: Chūjí nóngyè hézuòshède shíhou, tǔdì yě fēnhóng. Gāojí nóngyèshè tǔdì bù fēnhóng. Duō lǎo duō dé. Zhèiyàng jiù gèng néng fāhuì nóngmínde shēngchǎn jíjìxíng.  
When there were elementary agricultural cooperatives, the profit from the land was distributed. For advanced agricultural cooperatives, the profits from the land were not distributed. The more you worked, the more you got. In this way they were able to stimulate development of the people's enthusiasm for production even more.
- A: Ou, zhèiyàng wǒ dǒng le. Hěn hǎo, hěn hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yǐjīng wènle hěn duō le. Shíjian bù zǎo le. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yě děi zǒu le.  
Oh, now I understand. Well, well, I think I've already asked a lot. It's getting late. I think I should be going. Thank you.



Unit 6, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. The second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the reference list will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

This exercise contains a talk by a commune production brigade representative to a group of American visitors in which she gives them information about the brigade, Land Reform, and the Agricultural Cooperativization Movement.

The presentation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you might want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 149 as you listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

mǔ	a Chinese mou, roughly equal to 1/6 of an acre
shòu	to undergo, to be the object of, to receive
shēnghuo	life
kǔ	to be bitter, painful
lǐngdǎo	to lead
hébìngcheng	to merge into
Máo Zhǔxí	Chairman Mao
Dàtóng Rénmín Gōngshè	the name of a commune
chéng	to become
Běitóu Shēngchǎn Dàduì	the name of a production brigade
zǒngde lái shuō	on the whole
chéngji	achievements

bǐyibǐ	to compare
nǔlì	to be industrious
biàncéng	to change into

Exercise 3

In this exercise an elderly Chinese man answers the questions of an American visitor about life for the Chinese peasants before and after Liberation.

Listen to the conversation once straight through, then listen a second time and turn to page 150 and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

lǎorenjia	a form of address for an older person
kànqilai	when looking at...; in appearance
niánqīng	to be young
qīng	to be light, not heavy
shēnghuo	life
kǔ	to be bitter, painful
shòu	to undergo, to be the object of; to receive
lǐngdǎo	to lead
àn	according to
fēndào	to divide
jiànshèchéng	to build into
zhǔyì	principles
lìliang	strength
tígāo	to raise
hěbìngchéng	to merge into
Máo Zhǔxí	Chairman Mao
hǎoxiàng	to resemble
méi ér méi nǚ	without sons and daughters

Exercise 4

In this exercise an American Doctor speaks with a commune member about how the commune runs the cooperative medical treatment and the sort of services that are offered.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then on the second time through answer the questions found on page 150.

For this exercise you will need the following new words:

yīliáo	medicine, medical
yùfáng	to prevent, preventive
dǎ yùfángzhēn	to inoculate
yīwù rényuán	medical personnel
xùnlìan	to train
dìli	in the fields
dǎ zhēn	to give a shot
jiǎngdao	to talk about
gāi	should, ought
nóngmángde shíhou	during the busy season for farming

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. How many people are in the production brigade? How large is it?
2. Is the production brigade divided into further levels? If so, what are these? What are the main products they produce?
3. What was life like before Liberation? Why?
4. After Liberation did conditions change? If so, in what way?
5. In 1953 the Agricultural Cooperativization Movement was begun. Can you give some details of what this was like?
6. Since 1958 the organizations of the commune have undergone a change. What has this change been?
7. How does the production of 1971 compare with the production before Liberation?

After having answered these questions yourself, you might want to take a look at the translation for this talk found on page 151. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. With whom is the visitor speaking? What is the occupation of that person?
2. What was life like for the elderly Chinese man before Liberation?
3. Does the Chinese man say that things have remained the same after Liberation? If not, what sort of changes have occurred?
4. How was the Agricultural Cooperativization Movement carried out?
5. Does the old man have a family? If so, do they care for him? If not, how is his care provided for?

After having answered these questions yourself, you might want to take a look at the translation on page 153. You might also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. In what is the doctor interested?
2. Was medical treatment readily available for commune members before the cooperative medical treatment was started?
3. What was the first task of the medical cooperative movement?
4. What sort of personnel and facilities does each production brigade have?
5. Do commune members pay every time they have to see the doctor?
6. What happens if the commune personnel get sick while working in the fields?

After having answered these questions yourself, look on page 155 for the translation to this dialogue, then listen again to the dialogue to help you prepare to give your answers orally.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

Jīntiān Měiguó péngyou lái  
wōmen shēngchǎn dàduì cānguān. Wōmen  
hěn huānyíng.

Wōmen dàduì xiānzài yǒu liǎng-  
qiānwūbāisìshíduō rén, tǔdì miànjī  
wūqiānyībǎi mǔ. Dàduì xiàtóu yǒu  
shíge shēngchǎnduì. Wōmen zhǔyào  
shēngchǎn liángshí, yě shēngchǎn  
shuǐguǒ, shūcài.

Wōmende tǔdì suǐrán hěn dà,  
kěshì Jiěfàng yǐqián tǔrǎng bù hǎo.  
Nóngmín hái shòu dìzhūde bōxué hé  
yāpò, shēnghuò hěn kǔ.

Yījiūsìjiūnián Gòngchǎndǎng  
lǐngdǎo wōmen jìnxíng Tǔdì Gǎigé, yě  
gǎiliǎng tǔrǎng, bǎ dìzhūde dì  
dōu mòshōu le. Fēngēi nóngmín,  
nóngmín hěn gāoxìng. Shēngchǎnde  
dōngxi yuè lái yuè duō. Tǔdì Gǎigé  
yǐhòu bù jiǔ, yǒude nóngmín kāishǐ  
zūzhi hùzhùzǔ.

Yījiūwūsānnián wōmen kāishǐ  
gǎo Nóngyè Hézuòhuà Yùndòng. Èrshíduō  
jiā rén zài yìqǐ zūzhi chūjí nóngyè  
hézuòshè. Dàjiā zài yìqǐ láodòng.  
Yījiūwǔliùnián shíjǐge chūjí nóngyè  
hézuòshè hébìngcheng yíge gāojí  
nóngyè hézuòshè.

Yījiūwǔbānián Máo Zhǔxí hàozhào  
chénglì rénmin gōngshè. Wōmen jiù  
cānjiā Dàtóng Rénmin Gōngshè,  
chéngle Běitóu shēngchǎn dàduì.  
Wōmende zūzhi dōu shì cóng shǎo  
dào duō, cóng xiǎo dào dà.

Yījiūqīyīnián wōmen shēngchǎnde  
liángshí měi mǔ bǐ Jiěfàng qián duō  
bābèi.

Today we welcome our American  
friends who have come to visit our  
production brigade.

Our brigade now has over  
2,540 people, and a land area of  
over 5,100 mou. Under the brigade  
there are ten production teams.  
We produce mainly grain, and  
also fruit and vegetables.

Although we have a lot of  
land, before Liberation the soil  
was bad. The peasants also suffered  
the exploitation and oppression  
of the landlords. Life was very  
hard.

In 1949, the Communist Party  
led us in carrying out the Land  
Reform, and in improving the soil.  
All the landlord's land was con-  
fiscated and divided among the  
peasants, which made the peasants  
very happy. More and more things  
were produced. Not long after the  
Land Reform, some peasants began to  
organize mutual aid teams.

In 1953 we began the  
Agricultural Cooperativization  
Movement. Over twenty families  
together organized an elementary  
agricultural cooperative. Every-  
one worked together. In 1956  
ten-odd elementary agricultural  
cooperatives merged into an  
advanced agricultural cooperative.

In 1958 Chairman Mao issued  
the call to establish people's  
communes. Then we joined the  
Tat'ung People's Commune and  
became the Peit'ou Production  
Brigade. Our organizations  
have multiplied and expanded.

In 1971 the grain produced  
by each mou was nine times more  
than that before Liberation.

Wǒmen yě zhòng shuǐguǒ, zhǔyào  
shì píngguo. ...Wǒmen yǐjīng yǒu  
yíge huàféichǎng. Zōngde lái shuō  
wǒmen suīrán zuòle hěn duō gōngzuò,  
yǒu yìxiē chéngjì, kěshì hé  
Dàzhài bìyībǐ jiù juéde zuòde hái  
hěn bú gòu. Wǒmen děi zài nǚlì.  
Xīwang míngnián biànchéng yíge  
'Nóngyè Xué Dàzhài'de xiānjīn  
dānwèi.

We also grow fruit, mainly  
apples. ...We already have a  
chemical fertilizer plant. On  
the whole, although we have done a  
lot of work, and have made some  
achievements, compared to Tachai  
we feel we still haven't done  
nearly enough. We have to do  
more hard work. Next year we  
hope to become an advanced unit  
which 'In Agriculture Learns  
from Tachai'.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| F: <u>Lǎorenjia</u> , nǐ duō dà suìshu le?   | How old are you, sir?   |
| M: Wǒ jīnnián qīshíbā suì le.  | I'm seventy-eight years old this year.  |
| F: Nǐ <u>kànqilai</u> shēntǐ jiànkāng,<br>hái hěn <u>niánqīng</u> .  | You look very healthy and still quite young.  |
| M: Wǒ hěn shǎo shēng bìng. Xiànzài<br>měitiān hái zuò yìxiē <u>qīngde</u><br>láodòng.  | I very rarely get sick. Now I still do a little light work every day.   |
| F: Wǒ tīngshuō Zhōngguode nóngmín<br>zài Jiěfàng yǐqián <u>shēnghuo</u><br>hěn <u>kǔ</u> , shì zhēnde ma?  | I hear that life was very hard for the Chinese peasants before Liberation. Is that so?  |
| M: Shì zhēnde.   | Yes, it is.   |
| F: Nǐ néng bu neng gēn wo jiǎng-<br>jiang nǐ yǐqián dōu zuòguo<br>shénme?  | Could you tell me what you've done in the past?   |
| M: Hǎo. Jiěfàng yǐqián wǒ méiyǒu<br>tǔdì. Wǒ zū dìzhūde dì.<br>Láodòng yìnián shēngchǎnde<br>liángshi jībēnshàng dōu gěile<br>dìzhū. Zìjǐ chángcháng chībubǎo,<br><u>shòu</u> dìzhūde bōxuē hé yāpò. | All right. Before Liberation I had no land. I rented land from a landlord. I gave the landlord practically all the grain that I worked for a year to produce. Often, I didn't have enough to eat, and I suffered the exploitation and oppression of the landlord. |

Jiěfàng yǐhòu Gòngchǎngdǎng  
lǐngdǎo wǒmen jìnxíng Tǔdì  
Gǎigé Yùndòng bǎ dìzhǔde  
tǔdì dōu mòshòule, fēngēi  
nóngmín.

Wǒmen měijiā dōu àn rénkǒu  
fēndào le tǔdì. Kěshì wǒmen  
nóngmín bú shì yǒule tǔdì jiù  
xíng le. Wǒmen yào bǎ Zhōng-  
guó jiànshèchéng yige  
Gòngchǎn zhǔyì guójiā, suǒyì  
Gòngchǎndǎng lǐngdǎo wǒmen  
jìnxíng le hǎojícide yùndòng.

Shǒuxiān zài Yījiǔwǔsānnián  
wǒmen kāishi gāo Nóngyè  
Hézuòhuà Yùndòng. Nóngmín  
dōu cānjiā chūjí nóngyè  
hézuòshè. Shíji jiā rén  
zài yìqǐ láodòng. Rén duō,  
lìliang dà. Wǒmende shēng-  
chǎn tígāo le. Zài nèige  
shíhou yīnwei shì chūjí  
hézuòshè, tǔdì fēnhóng.  
Dào le Yījiǔwǔliùnián Gòng-  
chǎndǎng lǐngdǎo wǒmen gāo  
gāojí nóngyè hézuòshè. Shíjige  
chūjí nóngyè hézuòshè hébìng-  
chéng yige gāojí nóngyè hézuòshè.  
Tǔdì bù fēnhóng le. Duō lǎo duō  
dé. Zhèiyàng jiù gèng néng fāhuī  
nóngmínde shēngchǎn jījìxìng.  
Gāojí nóngyè hézuòshè shì bu  
shì jiùshì wǒmen zuìhòude mùdi  
le ne? Hái bú shì. Gāojí nóngyè  
hézuòshè hái bú gòu dà. Suǒyì  
dào Yījiǔwǔbānián Máo Zhǔxí  
yǒu lǐngdǎo wǒmen chénglì le  
rénmín gōngshè. Rénmín gōngshè  
yǒu dà yǒu hǎo. Shēngchǎn  
niánnián tígāo. Shèyuánde  
shēnghuò yuè lái yuè hǎo. Xiàng  
wǒ zhèiyàng méi ér méi nǚde  
lǎo rén, gōngshè pài rén  
zhàogu wo. Zhèi dōu shì  
Gòngchǎndǎng, Máo Zhǔxí  
lǐngdǎode hǎo a!

After Liberation, the Communist  
Party led us in carrying out  
the Land Reform Movement, and  
all the landlords' land was  
confiscated and divided among  
the peasants.

Each family received land in ac-  
cordance with the number of  
people in the family. But for  
us peasants, it wasn't enough  
just to have land. We wanted to  
develop China into a Communist  
country. So the Communist Party  
led us in carrying out many  
different movements.

First, in 1953 we began the  
Agricultural Cooperativization  
Movement. The peasants all joined  
in the elementary agricultural  
cooperatives. Ten odd families  
worked together. With more people,  
our strength was greater. Our  
production rose. At that time,  
because it was an elementary  
cooperative, the profits from  
the land were shared. By 1956  
the Communist Party led us in  
forming advanced agricultural  
cooperatives. Ten-odd elementary  
agricultural cooperatives merged  
into one advanced agricultural  
cooperative. The profits from  
the land weren't shared. The  
more you worked, the more you got.  
This way we were able to develop  
the peasants' enthusiasm for prod-  
uction even more. But were the  
advanced agricultural cooperatives  
our final goal? No. The advanced  
cooperatives still weren't big  
enough. So in 1958 Chairman Mao  
led us in establishing the people's  
communes. The people's communes  
were large efficient. Production  
rose every year. The life of the  
commune members got better and  
better and better. The commune  
assigns someone to take care of  
an old man like me, without any

sons or daughters. It's all because of the Communist Party's and Chairman Mao's good leadership!

F: Xièxie ni gāosule wo zhènme duōde shìqing. Wǒ jiù hǎoxiàng shàngle yītáng līshǐ kè.

Thanks for telling me about so many things. It's just as if I've attended a history class.

M: Xīwang ni yǐhòu lái Zhōngguóde shíhou, hái lái wǒmen zhèr wár.

I hope that when you come back to China in the future you'll come back to see us.

F: Hǎo. Zàijiàn.

I will. Goodbye.

M: Zàijiàn.

Goodbye.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

M: Wǒ shì yíge yīsheng. Wǒ duì Zhōngguó rénmin gōngshè yīliáo hé yùfáng gōngzuòde qǐngkuàng hěn yǒu xìngqù. Tīngshuō nimen gōngshède hézuò yīliáo bānde yòu zǎo yòu hǎo, shì yíge bàn hézuò yīliáo de xiānjìn dānwèi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ jiǎngyījiǎng nimen shì zěnmē bàn hézuò yīliáo de, hǎo bu hǎo?

I'm a doctor. I'm very interested in what's going on with the work in medical treatment and preventive medicine in China's people's communes. I hear that the cooperative medical treatment in your commune was started early and run well and that it's an advanced unit in cooperative medical treatment. Would you please tell me how you run the cooperative medical treatment?

F: Hǎo. Wǒmen gōngshè yíngòng yǒu bāge shēngchǎn dàduì. Xiànzài rénkou shì liùqiānsānbǎiwúshíduō rén. Zài bàn hézuò yīliáo yǐqián wǒmen quán gōngshè zhǐ yǒu yíge wèishēngsuǒ, shíèrge yīwù rényuán; shèyuán kàn bìng hěn bù fāngbian.

All right. Altogether our cooperative has eight production brigades. The population is now over 6,350. Before we started the cooperative treatment our whole commune only had a clinic and twelve medical personnel, and it was difficult for the commune members to get treated.

Yījiǔliùqīnián wǒmen kāishǐ bàn hézuò yīliáo. Dìyíge gōngzuò jiùshì xùnlián yīwù rényuán. Nèi shíhou wǒmen wèishēngsuǒde yīsheng, hùshì jiù bàn xuéxiào, xùnlián chìjiǎo yīsheng hé hùshì.

In 1967 we began cooperative medical treatment. The first job was to train the medical personnel. The doctors and nurses from our clinic then started a school to train barefoot doctors and nurses.



Xiànzài wǒmen yǐjīng yǒu yībǎi-sìshíduōge yīwù rényuán.  
Gōngshè yǒu wèishēngyuán. Měige shēngchǎn dàduì yǒu wèishēngsuǒ, měige shēngchǎnduì yǒu wèishēngshì. Wèishēngshì yǒu chījiǎo yīsheng gěi shèyuán kàn bìng.

At present we already have over 140 medical personnel. The commune has a hospital. Every production brigade has a clinic, and every production team has a health room. The health room has a barefoot doctor who treats commune members.

Měige shèyuán yīnián gěi yīkuài qián. Yǐhòu kàn bìng jiù bú yào qián le. Zài nóng mángde shíhou, shèyuán děi zài dìli gōngzuò, yǒule bìng méi shíjian qù kàn bìng, chījiǎo yīsheng jiù dào dìli qù gěi shèyuán kàn bìng. Yǒu shíhou wǎnshang hái bǎ yào sòngdao shèyuán jiāli.

Every commune member pays one dollar a year, and then they can see the doctor for free. During the busy season for farming, when the commune personnel have to work in the fields, they don't have time to go see a doctor if they get sick, so a barefoot doctor goes to the fields to examine them. Sometimes in the evening he will even deliver medicine to commune members' houses.

Yùfáng gōngzuò yě shì wǒmen hěn zhōngyàode gōngzuò. Chījiǎo yīsheng dào yídingde shíjian gěi xiǎo háizi hé shèyuán dǎ yùfáng zhēn.

Prevention work is also an important job of ours. At certain times the barefoot doctor inoculates the children and commune personnel.

M: Xièxie nǐ gěi wo jiǎng le zhènme duō guānyu nǐmen gōngshè bàn hézuò yīliáode qǐngkuàng.

Thank you for telling me so much about the way your commune runs cooperative treatment.

F: Bú kèqi. Nǐ hái xiǎng zhīdao shenme wǒ méi jiǎngdàode, qǐng suǐbiàn tíchulai.

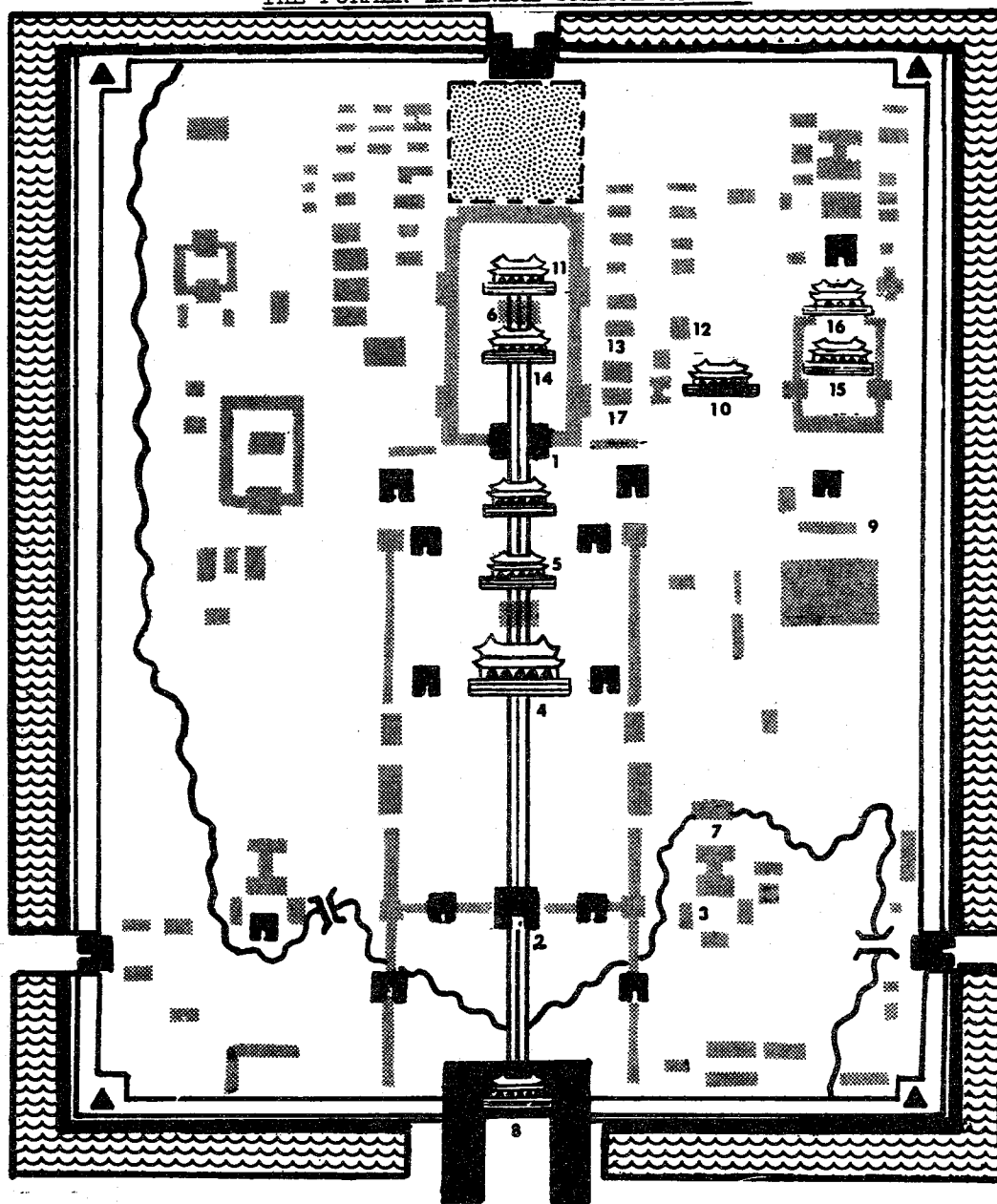
Don't mention it. If there's anything else that I didn't talk about that you'd like to know, feel free to bring it up.

M: Méiyǒu shenme wèntí le. Shíjian bù zǎo le. Wǒ gāi zǒu le. Xièxie. Zàijiàn.









I don't have any more questions. It's getting late. I should be going. Thank you. Goodbye.

F: Zàijiàn.

Goodbye.



- 1 Gate of Heavenly Purity - Qián Qīng Mén
- 2 Gate of Supreme Harmony - Tài Hé Mén
- 3 Hall of Literary Splendor - Wén Huá Diàn
- 4 Hall of Supreme Harmony - Tài Hé Diàn
- 5 Hall of the Preservation of Harmony - Bǎo Hé Diàn
- 6 Hall of Union - Jiāo Tǎi Diàn
- 7 Imperial Library - Wén Yuān Gé
- 8 Meridian Gate - Wǔ Mén
- 9 Nine Dragon Wall - Jiǔ Lóng Bì
- 10 Palace of Ancestral Worship - Fèng Xiān Diàn
- 11 Palace of Earthly Tranquility - Kūn Níng Gōng
- 12 Palace of Eternal Harmony (Museum of Ceramics) - Yǒng Hé Gōng
- 13 Palace of Heavenly Favor (Museum of Ceramics) - Chéng Qián Gōng
- 14 Palace of Heavenly Purity - Qián Qīng Gōng
- 15 Palace of Imperial Supremacy - Huáng Jí Diàn
- 16 Palace of Peace and Longevity - Níng Shòu Gōng
- 17 Palace of Prosperity (Museum of Bronzes) - Zhāi Gōng

-  gate
-  moat
-  Golden Water River
-  Imperial Garden
-  watchtower
-  palace wall
-  main imperial hall
-  palace building

Unit 7, Reference List

1. B: Gùgōng guòqù yě jiào  
Zǐjìnchéng. In the past, the Imperial Palace was also called the Forbidden City.
2. A: Gùgōng shì nǎixiē  
cháodàide huánggōng? During what dynasties was the Imperial Palace the emperor's residence?
- B: Shì Míngcháo hé  
Qīngcháo de huánggōng. The Imperial Palace was the emperor's residence of the Ming Dynasty and the Ch'ing Dynasty.
3. A: Zhěngèr Gùgōng zhānde  
tǔdì miànjī duō dà? How much land does the whole area of the Imperial Palace occupy?
- B: Qīshìèrwànduō píng-  
fāng mǐ. More than 720,000 square meters.
4. A: Gùgōng dàyuē yǒu duō-  
shao jiān fāngwū? Approximately how many rooms does the Imperial Palace have?
- B: Yǒu jiǔqiānduō jiān  
fāngwū. There are more than 9,000 rooms.
5. A: Qiánbiar de dà diàn  
yǐqián zuò shénme yòng? What were the large halls in the front used for?
- B: Shì huángdì hé dàchénmen  
tǎolùn hé juédìng  
guójiā dàshì de dìfang. They were where the emperor and his chief statesmen discussed and decided national affairs.
6. A: Gùgōng de zuì hòubiār shì  
shénme? What is at the extreme rear of the Imperial Palace?
- B: Zuì hòubiār shì  
Yùhuāyuán. The Imperial Garden is at the extreme rear.

7. B: Zhèige wěidàde jiàn-  
zhù chùchù dōu tīxiànle  
rénmínde zhìnuì.  
Every part of this great  
structure embodies  
the people's wisdom.
8. B: Zhèige wěidàde jiànzhù  
chuchù dōu chōngfèn  
tīxiànle rénmínde  
zhìhuì hé chuàngzàoli.  
Every part of this great  
structure fully shows  
the people's wisdom  
and creative ability.
9. B: Nǐ yí dào nar, jiù kéyi  
kàndechulai Zhōngguode  
wénhuà hé yìshu  
shuǐpíng shì duóme  
gāo le.  
As soon as you get there  
You can see how high  
the level of China's  
culture and art is.
10. A: Qīngcháo mōnián rénmin  
wèishénme duì MǎnQīng  
zhèngfǔ bù mǎnyì?  
Why were the people dissatisfied  
with the Manchu Ch'ing  
government in the last years  
of the Ch'ing Dynasty?
- B: Yīnwei MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ  
tài fǔbāi, guójiā  
hěn ruō, suǒyì rénmin  
bù mǎnyì.  
Because the Manchu Ch'ing  
government was very  
corrupt, and the country  
was weak, therefore the  
people were dissatisfied.
11. B: Nèige shíhou Zhōngguo  
cháng bèi wàiguo  
qīnlüè.  
At that time China was often  
invaded by foreign countries.
12. A: MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ shì  
bu shì Yījiǔyīnián  
bèi tuīfānde?  
Was the Manchu Ch'ing  
government overthrown  
in 1911?
- B: Duì, Yījiǔyīnián  
Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānsheng  
lǐngdǎo Xīnhài Gémìng  
bǎ MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ  
tuīfān le.  
That's right. In 1911  
Dr. Sun Yatsen led the  
Hsinhai Revolution and  
overthrew the Manchu  
Ch'ing government.
13. B: Yǐhòu, zhèngfǔ jiù bǎ  
Zǐjīnchéng gǎiwéi  
Gùgōng Bówuyuǎn,  
ràng rénmin suíbiàn  
cānguān le.  
Afterward, the government  
took the Forbidden City  
and converted it into  
the Palace Museum, allowing  
people to visit as they like.

Vocabulary

bèi	by (indicates the one who is carrying out the action in passive sentences)
cháodài chōngfèn chuàngzàoli chùchù	dynasty fully creative ability everywhere
dàchén dàshì diàn duóme	chief statesman, high minister important affairs palace, hall how ... !, so ... !
fángwū fǔbài	house, building, room to be corrupt
gǎiwéi Gùgōng	to convert to, turn into, change to the Imperial Palace (short for Gùgōng Bówuyuàn)
guòqù	formerly
huánggōng	imperial palace, emperor's residence
lǐngdǎo	to lead; leader
MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ mǎnyì mǐ	the Manchu Ch'ing government to be satisfied meter
Qīngcháo	Ch'ing Dynasty
ruò	to be weak
shuǐpíng Sūn Zhōngshān	level, standard Sun Yatsen
tǐxiàn tuīfān	to embody, to realize, to show to overthrow
wénhuà	culture
Xīnhài Gémìng	the Hsinhai Revolution (the Revolution of 1911)

yìshù  
Yùhuāyuán

art, artistic  
the Imperial Garden

zhàn  
zhěngèr

to occupy a space  
to be whole, to be complete;  
the whole of; completely

zhìhuì  
Zǐjìnchéng

wisdom  
the Forbidden City

Unit 7. Reference Notes

1. B: Gùgōng guòqù yě jiào  
Zǐjìnchéng.

In the past, the Imperial  
Palace was also called  
the Forbidden City.

Notes on No. 1

Gùgōng: 'Imperial Palace' In conversation the full name  
Gùgōng Bówuguǎn sometimes gets reduced to Gùgōng.

guòqù: 'in the past' Like other time words such as jīntian or  
qùnian, guòqù comes before the verb. It also comes before any adverbs,  
such as yě, which must themselves come before the verb. It may also  
come before the subject.

Guòqù Gùgōng yě jiào  
Zǐjìnchéng.

In the past, the Imperial  
Palace was also called  
the Forbidden City.

Zǐjìnchéng: 'Forbidden City', literally the 'Purple Forbidden  
City'. This was the name for the Imperial Palace until the end of the  
Ch'ing Dynasty.

2. A: Gùgōng shì nǎixiē  
cháodàide huánggōng?

During what dynasties was the  
Imperial Palace the  
emperor's residence?

B: Shì Míngcháo hé  
Qīngcháode huánggōng.

The Imperial Palace was  
the emperor's residence  
of the Ming Dynasty and  
the Ch'ing Dynasty.

Notes on No. 2

huánggōng: 'imperial residence', literally 'emperor-palace'.  
The huáng is the same huáng as in huángdì, 'emperor'.

3. A: Zhěnggèr Gùgōng zhānde  
tǔdì miànji duō dà?

How much land does the  
whole area of the Imperial  
Palace occupy?

B: Qīshìèrwànduō píng-  
fāng mǐ.

More than 720,000 square  
meters.

Note on No. 3

zhěnggè: 'whole' (You may also hear it pronounced zhěnggè.) Zhěnggè sometimes acts like an adjective, modifying nouns, as in the sentence above. It also sometimes acts like an adverb ('wholly, completely'), coming before the verb in the sentence.

Qùnián fāshēng shuǐzāide  
shíhou, zhèige dìqū  
zhěnggè dōu shì shuǐ.

During the flood last year,  
this whole area was  
covered with water.

Guānyu zhèige wèntí, wǒ  
zhěnggè bù dǒng.

I don't understand the least  
bit about this question.

4. A: Gùgōng dàyuē yǒu duō-  
shao jiān fángwū?

Approximately how many  
rooms does the Imperial  
Palace have?

B: Yǒu jiǔqiānduō jiān  
fángwū.

There are more than 9,000  
rooms.

Note on No. 4

fángwū: 'house, building, room' In most instances fángwū refers to a building. However, when used in talking about the various structures in the Imperial Palace, it refers to rooms, pavilions, halls and buildings.

Wúxī jiāoqū yǒu hěn duō  
fángwū jiànzài hébiān.

In the suburbs of Wusih, there  
are many buildings built  
alongside the river.

5. A: Qiánbiarde dà diàn  
yǐqián zuò shénme yòng?

What were the large halls in  
the front used for?

B: Shi huángdì hé dàchénmen  
tǎolùn hé juédìng  
guójiā dàshìde dìfang.

They were where the emperor  
and his chief statesmen  
discussed and decided  
national affairs.

Note on No. 5

zuò ... yòng: This pattern is used to explain what something is used for. In the examples which follow you need to know that guō is a 'wok', a pot for cooking.



Zhèige guō shì chǎo  
cǎi yōngde.

This pot is used for frying  
vegetables.

Zhèijiān wūzi, wǒ zhǔnbèi  
zuò shūfáng yōng.

I'm planning to use this  
room as a study.

6. A: Gùgōngde zuì hòubiar shì  
shénme?

What is at the extreme rear  
of the Imperial Palace?

B: Zuì hòubiar shì Yùhuāyuán.

The Imperial Garden is at the  
extreme rear.

Note on No. 6

zuì hòubiar: 'farthest towards the back' You've usually seen the adverb zuì, 'most', modifying verbs. Here it is used to modify a noun, the location word hòubiar. Zuì can also modify the following location words:

shàngtou, shàngbian  
xiàtou, xiàbian, dǐxia  
qiántou, qiánbian  
hòutou, hòubian  
lǐtou, lǐbian  
wàitou, wàibian

zuǒbian	shàngmian
yòubian	xiàmian
dōngbian	qiánmian
nánbian	hòumian
xībian	lǐmian
běibian	wàimian

Zhèige hùtong zuì dōngbiar  
shì shénme?

What is to the farthest east of  
this alley?

7. B: Zhèige wěidàde jiàn-  
zhù chùchù dōu tǐxiānle  
rénmínde zhīhuì.

Every part of this great  
structure embodies the  
people's wisdom.

Note on No. 7

chùchù: 'every part, everywhere'

Chūntiānde Huáshèngdùn,  
chùchù dōu shì huār.

In the springtime in Washington  
there are flowers everywhere.

tǐxiàn: 'to show, manifest, embody' Notice that in the above sentence even though the English is written in the present tense the Chinese uses the marker le. The verb tǐxiàn is usually used with the marker le or a resultative ending, such as -chū.

In the first example, zhǎnlǎnhuì, 'exhibition' is used.

Zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuì tǐxiànchū  
Měiguó gōngyè shì duōme fādá.

This exhibit shows how developed  
American industry is.

Nèijiàn chūtǔ wénwù tǐxiànle  
Tángcháo láodòng rénmínde  
shēngchǎn shuǐpíng.

That archaeological find shows  
the working people's standard  
of production during the  
T'ang dynasty.

8. B: Zhèige wěidàde jiànzhù  
chùchū dōu chōngfèn  
tǐxiànle rénmínde  
zhìhuì hé chuàngzàolì.

Every part of this great  
structure fully shows  
the people's wisdom  
and creative ability.

#### Note on No. 8

-lì: This syllable is added to a few words to form compounds meaning '\_\_\_\_\_ ability'. Here are some other examples:

láodōnglì	working force
nénglì	ability
tīnglì	listening ability, listening comprehension
rénlì	manpower
diànlì	electric power

9. B: Nǐ yí dào nàr, jiù keyi  
kàndechulai Zhōngguode  
wénhuà hé yìshu  
shuǐpíng shì duōme  
gāo le.

As soon as you get there,  
you can see how high  
the level of China's  
culture and art is.

#### Notes on No. 9

shuǐpíng: 'level, standard'

Rìběnde gōngyè shēngchǎn  
shuǐpíng zhēn gāo!

Japan's industrial production  
standard is really high!

Tāde Déwén shuǐpíng  
bú gòu gāo.

His level in German isn't  
high enough.

duóme: This is the word for 'how' or 'so' used in statements and exclamatory sentences.

Zhèige nǚháizi duóme  
piàoliang!

How pretty this girl is!

Jīntiānde tiānqì duóme hǎo a!

The weather's so nice today!

... shì duóme gāo le: The use of the pattern yī ... jiù ... permits the use of the marker le in the sentence above. When yī ... jiù ... is used in a sentence, the idea expressed in the 'then' clause is considered a new situation, and therefore the clause takes le. Even though this is not a new situation as of now, but one which will occur when the conditions of the sentence have been fulfilled, the le is still used.

10. A: Qīngcháo mònián rénmin  
wèishénme duì MǎnQīng  
zhèngfǔ bù mǎnyì?

Why were the people dissatisfied  
with the Manchu Ch'ing  
government in the last years  
of the Ch'ing dynasty?

B: Yīnwei MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ  
tài fǔbài, guójiā  
hěn ruò, suǒyì rénmin  
bù mǎnyì.

Because the Manchu Ch'ing  
government was very  
corrupt, and the country  
was weak, therefore the  
people were dissatisfied.

Note on No. 10

duì ... (bù) mǎnyì: 'to be (un)satisfied with ...' In the English sentence above the preposition 'with' is used, while in the Chinese sentence the prepositional verb duì, 'to, toward' is used. Sentences using the state verb mǎnyì may also be phrased so that it is not necessary to use duì:

Wǒde huídá, nǐ mǎnyì ma?

Are you satisfied with my  
answer?

Tā duì nǐ zhènme hǎo. Nǐ  
wèishénme bù mǎnyì?

He is so good to you. Why  
are you dissatisfied?

11. B: Nèige shíhou Zhōngguó  
cháng bèi wàiguó  
qīnlüè.

At that time China was often  
invaded by foreign countries.

12. A: MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ shì  
bu shì Yījiǔyīnián  
bèi tuīfānde?  
Was the Manchu Ch'ing  
government overthrown  
in 1911?
- B: Duì, Yījiǔyīnián  
Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānsheng  
lǐngdǎo Xīnhài Gémìng  
bǎ MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ  
tuīfān le.  
That's right. In 1911  
Dr. Sun Yatsen led the  
Hsinhai Revolution and  
overthrew the Manchu  
Ch'ing government.

Notes on Nos. 11 and 12

bèi: This is the prepositional verb which indicates the doer of the action in passive sentences, similar to the English 'by'. It is also used without an object to indicate passive sentences, as in the question in No. 12 above.

Prepositional verbs are usually followed by nouns, which are recipients of the action in some way. The object of the prepositional verb bèi is not the recipient, but the instigator of the action.

Object of the Prepositional Verb as Recipient

- Tā duì wǒ hěn bù mǎnyì.                   He is very dissatisfied with me.
- Qǐng ni gěi wǒ shuōmíng.                Please explain it to me.
- Tā bǎ zhuōzi bāndào  
lóushang qu le.                            She moved the table upstairs.

Object of the Prepositional Verb as Instigator

- Tāde xīn qìche bèi rén  
chuàng le.                                 His new car was hit by someone.

Often no special pattern or grammatical device is needed to express a passive meaning in Chinese.

- Nǐde zhèige cháběi shì zài  
shénme dìfang mǎide?                   Where was this teacup of yours  
bought?

But sometimes a passive meaning is also shown by marking the doer of the action in a non-subject position. This can be done by using the prepositional verb bèi.

- Nèige rén nǎzǒule wǒde yǔsǎn.       That person took away my umbrella.
- Wǒde yǔsǎn bèi nèige rén  
nǎzǒu le.                                 My umbrella got taken away  
by that person.

The prepositional verb bèi can also be added WITHOUT an object to emphasize the passive meaning of a sentence.

Tāde xīn qìche bèi chuàng le. His new car was hit.

13. B: Yǐhòu, zhèngfǔ jiù bǎ  
Zǐjìnchéng gǎiwéi  
Gùgōng Bówuyuàn,  
ràng rénmin suǐbiàn  
cānguān le.

Afterward, the government  
took the Forbidden City  
and converted it into the  
Palace Museum, allowing  
people to visit as they like.

Unit 7, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

Gùgōng--guòqù yě jiào Zǐjīnchéng--shì Míngcháo hé Qīngcháode huánggōng. Cóng Yīsìlíngliùnián kāishǐ xiūjiàn, dào Yīsìèrlíngnián cái xiūwán. Dào xiànzài yǐjīng yǒu wǔbǎiwúshíduōniǎnde lìshǐ le.

Zhènggèr Gùgōng zhānde tǔdì miànji shì qīshìèrwānduō píngfāng mǐ. Yǒu jiǔqiān duō jiān fāngwū. Gùgōngde jiànzhù zhǔyào fēn qiánhòu liǎng dà bùfen. Qiánbian yǒu sāngē dà diàn shì huángdì hé dàchénmen tāolùn hé juédìng guójiā dàshìde dìfang. Hòumiande gōngdiàn shì huángdì zhūde dìfang. Zuì hòubian shì Yùhuāyuán.

Zhèige wěidàde jiànzhù chùchù dōu chōngfèn tǐxiànle rénminde zhìhuì hé chuàngzǎolì. Nǐ yí dào nàr jiù kěyǐ kàndechulai Zhōngguode wénhuà hé yìshu shuǐpíng shì duōme gāo le.

Dào Qīngcháo mònián yīnwei MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ tài fǔbài, guójiā hěn ruò, cháng bèi wàiguó qīnlüè. Rénmín duì Qīngcháo zhèngfǔ fēicháng bù mǎnyì. Zuìhòu zài Yījiǔyīynián Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānsheng língdǎo Xīnhài Géming bǎ MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ tuīfān le.

Yǐhòu jiù bǎ Zǐjīnchéng gǎiwéi Gùgōng Bówuyuán, ràng rénmin suǐbiàn cānguān le.

The Imperial Palace-- in the past also called the Forbidden City--was the emperor's residence of the Ming Dynasty and the Ch'ing Dynasty. They began to construct it in 1406 and it was not finished until 1420. It has already had more than 550 years of history.

The land which the whole Imperial Palace occupies is more than 720,000 square meters. There are more than 9,000 rooms. The Imperial Palace is essentially divided into two large parts, front and back. In the front are three great halls, where the emperor and his chief statesmen discussed and decided national affairs. The rear palace buildings are where the emperor lived. At the extreme rear is the Imperial Garden.

Every part of this great structure fully shows the people's wisdom and creative ability. As soon as you get there you can see how high the level of China's culture and art is.

In the last years of the Ch'ing Dynasty, because the Manchu Ch'ing government was too corrupt, and the country was weak, it was often invaded by foreign countries. The people were extremely dissatisfied with the Ch'ing government. Finally, in 1911, Mr. Sun Yat-sen led the Hsinhai Revolution, and overthrew the Manchu Ch'ing government.

Afterwards, the Forbidden City was converted into the Palace Museum, allowing the people to visit as they like.

Unit 7, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise you will hear a talk given by a museum guide discussing the importance of the Shensi Provincial Museum, its history, and the types of exhibits it houses.

The presentation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you might want to listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand the talk:

shěng	province
zhǎnlǎn	to exhibit
bǐjiào	comparatively, relatively
gǔdài	ancient times
jiàn dū	to set up the capital
zhǔxí	chairman
shǒugōngyè	handicrafts
kēxué	science
yǒuhǎo	friendly
Wúchǎn Jiējí Wénhuà Dà Gémìng Yùndòng	the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution
qǐyì	uprising
bēishí	monument

The questions for this exercise on are page 171.

Exercise 3

This exercise is a talk on the city of Loyang in northwest Honan. Loyang has been inhabited since before the Han Dynasty.

Listen to the talk once straight through, then listen a second time and turn to page 171 and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand the talk:

Luòyáng	Loyang
shěng	province
gǔdū	ancient capital
zhōngxīn	center
gǔdài	ancient times
gùshi	story
shāndòng	mountain caves
Fóxiàng	Buddhist statues
Língdì Líng	the name of a tomb, the tomb of Emperor Ling of the Han Dynasty

Exercise 4

This exercise is a talk introducing the city of Nanking.

Listen to the presentation straight through once. Then on the second time through answer the questions found on page 172.

For this exercise you will need the following new words and phrases:

gǔchéng	ancient city
jiàn dū	to set up the capital
jiàn lì	to set up, establish
línshí	temporary
Zhōngshānlíng	the name of Sun Yatsen's tomb
kèzhe	carved, engraved



'Tiān Xià Wèi Gōng'

lǚhuà

'The World Belongs to Everyone'

to make green, to plant to make it  
green, to landscapeQuestions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where is the Shensi Provincial Museum? How large is it?
2. Why is the Shensi Provincial Museum a good place to carry on archaeological work?
3. Is Shensi an important region? If so, why?
4. What does the speaker say the exhibits show about the working people?
5. How do we know that China had friendly relations with many countries from very early times on?
6. What does the speaker say are good materials for carrying out the class education of the people?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this talk found on page 172. You may also want to listen to the presentation again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class. A translation is found on page 173.

1. Why is Loyang famous?
2. Is there a special type of work that can be carried out well in Loyang?
3. What is located west of the river in Loyang? What can be found inside?
4. Is there a particularly famous tomb in Loyang? If so, what is it famous for?

Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will

be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is Nanking? Did only one dynasty establish its capital in Nanking?
2. When and under what conditions was an interim government established in Nanking?
3. What is the most famous place in Nanking? What can be found there?
4. What happened after Liberation?
5. How many visitors go to the tomb each year?

After having answered these questions yourself, look on page 174 for the translation to the talk, then listen to it again to help you prepare to say your answers orally.

### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

Shānxī Shěng Bówuguǎn zài wǒmen Xiān. Zhěnggè miànji sīqiānduǒ píngfāng mǐ. Zhānlānde wénwù sānqiānduǒ jiàn. Shì jìnxíng kǎogǔ gōngzuòde hǎo dìfang.

The Shensi Provincial Museum is here in Sian. The total area is over four thousand square meters. There are over 3,000 artifacts on exhibit. It is a good place to carry on archeological work.

Shānxī shì wǒ guó lìshǐshàng wénhuà fāzhǎn bǐjiào zǎode yíge dìqū. Xiān gǔdàide shíhou yě jiào Cháng'ān; hěn duō cháodài dōu zài zhèr jiàn dū.

Shensi is a region where culture developed relatively early in our country's history. In ancient times, Sian was called Ch'angan. Many dynasties set up their capitals here.

Máo Zhǔxí shuō lìshǐ shì láodòng rénmin chuàngzàode. Tā shuōde hěn duì. Cóng zhèige Bówuguǎn zhānlānde dōngxī jiù kěyǐ kànchulai wǒ guó wěidàde wénhuà shì láodòng rénmin chuàngzàode. Zài zhèixīe wénwùli chùchū dōu tǐxiǎnle láodòng rénminde zhīnǚ né chuàngzàolì.

Chairman Mao said that history is created by the working people. He was right. You can see from the things that are exhibited in this museum that the great culture of our country was created by the working people. The wisdom and creativity of the working people are manifested everywhere in these cultural artifacts.

Wǒmen hái kěyǐ kàndào zài Tángcháo wǒ guóde nóngyè, shǒufōngyè, kēxué, hé wénhuà dōu yǐjīng yǒule hěn dàde fāzhǎn. Bówuguǎn yǒu hěn duō gǔdài wàiguóde qián, zhèi jiù shuōmíng Zhōngguó kǎn zǎo jiù gēn bù shǎo guójiā yǒu yǒukǎo guānxi.

We can also see that in the Tang Dynasty the agriculture, handicrafts, science and culture of our country had already developed greatly. The museum has a lot of ancient foreign money, which shows that China had friendly relations with quite a few countries very early on.

Zài Wúchǎn Jiējí Wénhuà Dà  
Gémìng Yùndòngde shíhou, zhèige  
Bówuguǎn hái xiǎng bànfa zhǎodào le  
tǐxiàn yìxiē gǔdài jiējí yāpò hé  
nóngmín qǐyìde bēishí. Zhèixiē dōu  
shì xiàng rénmin jìnxíng jiējí  
jiàoyùde hǎo cáiliào.

During the Great Proletarian  
Cultural Revolution, this museum  
also managed to find several stone  
tablets which show class oppression  
and peasant uprisings in ancient  
times. These are all good materials  
for carrying out the class education  
of the people.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

Luòyáng zài Hénán Shěng shì  
Zhōngguó yǒu míngde gǔdū. Sānqiān-  
nián yǐqián shì Zhōngguó wénhuàde  
zhōngxīn, yǒu hěn duō gǔdài huángdìde  
língmù. Nèige dìfang yǒu hěn duō lìshǐ  
gùsnì. Shì jìnxíng kǎogǔ gōngzuòde  
hǎo dìfang.

Loyang is in Honan Province.  
It is a famous ancient Chinese cap-  
ital. 3,000 years ago it was the  
center of China's culture. It has  
a lot of tombs of ancient emperors.  
There are a lot of historical tales  
about that place. It's a good place  
to carry on archaeological work.

Luòyáng yǒu yìtiáo hé, fēng-  
jǐng hěn hǎo. Zhèige héde xībiar  
yǒu hěn duō shāndòng. Shāngdòngli  
yǒu jǐqiāngē Fóxiàng. Dàde gāo sānshí  
chǐ, xiǎode bú dào yìchǐ. Dào Luòyáng  
qùde rén chàbuduō dōu qù cānguān  
zhèixiē Fóxiàng.

There is a river in Loyang  
with very nice scenery. To  
the west of the river there are  
a lot of caves. In the caves there  
are several thousand Buddhist  
statues. The biggest ones are 30  
feet tall, and the smallest ones  
are less than a foot. Almost every-  
one who goes to Loyang goes to  
see these statues.

Zài Luòyáng dōngběi wǔshí  
lǐde dìfang yǒu yíge Língdì Líng,  
gāo sānbǎi chǐ, yuǎnyuǎnde kàn, xiàng  
yíge xiǎo shān. Shì Luòyáng zuì  
dàde língmù.

Fifty li to the northeast of  
Loyang there is the tomb of the  
Emperor Ling, which is 300 feet tall.  
From afar, it looks like a hill.  
It is the largest tomb in Loyang.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

Nánjīng shì wǒ guó yǒu míngde lìshǐ gǔchéng. Yǒu hěn duō cháodài dōu zài zhèr jiàn dū. Qīngcháo mōnián MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ tài fǔbài. Rénmín hěn bù mǎnyì. Yǐjiūyīnián Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānsheng língdǎode Xīnhài Gémìng tuīfānle MǎnQīng zhèngfǔ, zài Nánjīng jiàn lǐle línshí zhèngfǔ. Yǐjiūsìjiūnián Sānyue, Zhōngguó Gòngchǎngdǎng jiěfàngle Nánjīng.

Nánjīng zuì yǒu míngde dìfang shì Zhōngshānlíng, Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānshengde língmù jiù zài nàr. Zhōngshānlíng miànji bāwànduō píngfāng mǐ. Cóng Yǐjiūèrliùnián kāishǐ dào Yǐjiūèrjiūnián cái jiàn hǎo. Língmùde dāménshang kèzhe Sūn Zhōngshān Xiānsheng xiěde 'Tiān Xià Wéi Gōng' sìge dà zì. Jiěfàng yǐhòu zhèngfǔ zài Zhōngshānlíng jìnxíngle xiūzhěng hé lǚhuà. Xiànzài yǐjīng shì yíge gèng piàoliangde dìfang le. Búdàn Zhōngguó rén xǐhuan dào zhèli lái wǎr, hěn duō wàiguó péngyou yě xǐhuan dào zhèli cānguān. Měinián dào Zhōngshānlíng cānguānde rén dàgài yǒu yībǎiduōwàn.

Nanking is one of our country's historic ancient cities. Many dynasties established their capital here. In the latter years of the Ch'ing Dynasty, the Ch'ing government was very corrupt. The people were discontent. In 1911 the Manchu-Ch'ing government was overthrown by the Hsin Hai Revolution, led by Sun Yatsen, who established an interim government in Nanking. In March of 1949 the Chinese Communist Party liberated Nanking.

The most famous place in Nanking is the 'Chung Shan Tomb', which is where Sun Yatsen's tomb is. The area of the Sun Yatsen Tomb is over 80,000 square meters. Begun in 1926, it wasn't completed until 1929. On the main gate of the tomb are engraved the four big characters 'The World Belongs To Everyone', written by Sun Yatsen. After Liberation, the government undertook repairs and landscaping at the Sun Yatsen Tomb. Now it's an even more beautiful place. Not only Chinese like to come here, a lot of foreigners like to come here to sightsee, too. About a million or more people go to visit the Sun Yatsen Tomb every year.

Unit 8, Reference List

1. A: Wǒmen jīntian qù cānguānde gōngchǎng jiào shénme?  
What is the factory which we are going to visit today called?
- B: Jiào Shànghǎi Huòchē Zhìzào chǎng.  
It's called the Shanghai Truck Manufacturing Plant.
2. A: Wǒ xiǎng tāmen gōngzuòde yíding hěn nǔlì.  
I think that they must work very industriously.
- B: Shìde. Jīngguo gōngren hé gānbùde nǔlì, dào Yījiǔ-wǔbānián, wǒmen zhèige chǎng zhìzào chéng sīdūn zhòngde huòchē.  
Yes. By 1958, through the hard work of the workers and cadres, this factory manufactured a four-ton truck.
3. A: Xiànzài nǐmen néng zhìzào duōshao dūnde huòchē?  
How heavy a truck are you able to build now?
- B: Yījiǔqiānyīnián yòu jìnyībù, kéyì zhìzào sānshíèr dūnde chē.  
In 1971 again we made some progress and were able to manufacture trucks weighing 32 tons.
4. A: Nǐmen zhìzào de huòchē shì zài shénme dìfang yòngde?  
Where are the trucks you build used?
- B: Shì zài kuàngqū yòngde.  
They are used in mining areas.
5. A: Mùqián de niánchǎnliàng shì duōshao?  
What is the yearly rate of production at present?
- B: Yīqiānwǔbǎiduo liàng.  
Over 1,500 trucks.

6. A: Nǐmende jīchuáng shì  
zìjǐ zhìzào de háishi  
jìnkǒu de?  
Do you manufacture machine  
tools yourselves or are  
they imported?
- B: Wǒmen hái yǒu yìxiē  
Jiěfàng yǐqián liúxia-  
laide jīqì.  
We still have some machines  
left from before Liberation.
- B: Búguò xiànzài yǒu jǐbù  
jīchuáng shì wǒmen zìjǐ  
shèjì zhìzào de.  
But now we have several ma-  
chine tools which we de-  
signed and manufactured  
ourselves.
7. A: Nǐmen zhèige gōngchǎng yǒu  
duōshao nǚgōng?  
How many women workers are  
there in this factory?
- B: Nǚgōng zhàn gōngrende  
bǎifēn zhī èrshísān.  
Women workers constitute  
23 percent of the workers.
8. B: Tāmen yě dānrèn gèjǐ  
lǐngdǎo gōngzuò.  
They also take on leadership  
work at every level.
9. A: Gōngren dōu yǒu shénme  
fúlì?  
What benefits do the workers  
have?
- B: Yǒu gōngfèi yīliáo, hái  
yǒu chǎng bānde  
tuōérsuǒ, yòuéryuán,  
shítáng, shenmede.  
They have free medical treat-  
ment, and also factory-run  
nurseries, kindergartens,  
dining halls, and so on.
10. A: Gōngrende gōngzuòfú shì  
gōngchǎng fāgei  
tāmen de ma?  
Are the workers' work clothes  
issued to them by the  
factory?
- B: Shìde. Chūle gōngzī yǐwài  
gōngchǎng hái fāgei  
tāmen gōngzuòfú.  
Yes. In addition to wages,  
the factory also issues  
work clothes to them.
11. A: Zhèige gōngchǎng yǒu gōng-  
ren sùshè ma?  
Does this factory have  
dormitories for the  
workers?
- B: Yǒu, gōngren jiāting dōu  
zhù jiāshù sùshè, méiyǒu  
jiāde gōngren zhù  
dānshēn sùshè.  
Yes, workers' families all  
live in family dormitories,  
those workers without  
families live in singles'  
dormitories.

12. A: Gōngren jiāo bu jiao  
fángzū hé shuǐdiànfèi?

Do the workers pay rent  
and water and electric  
fees?

B: Zhù jiāshǔ sùshède gōng-  
ren jiāo fángzū hé  
shuǐdiànfèi, zhù dānshēn  
sùshède gōngren zhǐ  
jiāo shuǐdiànfèi.

The workers living in  
family dormitories pay  
rent and water and  
electric fees; workers  
living in singles'  
dormitories only pay  
water and electric fees.

13. A: Zhèrde gōngren yèyú shíjian  
xuéxí shénme?

What do the workers here  
study in the time after  
work?

B: Tāmen xuéxí Mǎ-Liè Zhǔyì,  
Máo Zhǔxí zhùzuò, hé  
bào zhǐ. Hái xuéxí xiān-  
jìn de shēngchǎn jìshù.

They study Marxist-Leninist  
Principles, the works of  
Chairman Mao, and news-  
papers. They also study  
advanced production  
techniques.

14. A: Zhèige gōngchǎng shì  
'Gōngyè Xué Dàqīng'de  
xiānjìn dānwèi ma?

Is this factory an advanced  
unit which 'In Industry  
Learns from Tach'ing'?

B: Shìde, tāmen wèile fāzhǎn  
'Sìge Xiàndàihuà' nǚlì  
gōngzuò.

Yes, they work hard in order  
to expand 'The Four  
Modernizations'.

- (Not on tape) -

15. chǎnliàng

amount of production

16. jìnbù

to progress

17. jìshù rényuán

technician

Vocabulary

bǎifēn zhī... -bù	...percent (counter for units of machines)
chǎng bānde chǎnliàng	factory-run amount of production
dānrèn	to assume (a position or responsibilities)
dānshēn	alone, single (of a person)
fāgei	to give out, to distribute, to issue
fángzū fèi fúlì	rent (for a house) fee benefits
gèjí gōngfèi gōngfèi yīliáo	every level free service (government-sponsored) government-sponsored (free) medical treatment
'Gōngye Xué Dàqīng	'In Industry Learn from 'Tach'ing'
gōngzī gōngzuōfú	wages uniforms, work clothes
huǒchē huòchē zhìzào chǎng	truck truck manufacturing plant
jiāo	to pay, to hand over, to submit
jiāshǔ jiāting jīchuāng jìnbù jìnkǒu jìnyībù jìshu jìshu rényuán	family, household family, home machine tool to progress to import to make some progress skill, technique technician
kuàngū	mining area
liú	to keep someone or something, to stay, to remain
liúxiálai	to leave behind, to leave over
Mǎ-Liè zhǔyì	Marxist-Leninist principles, Marxism-Leninism



mùqián

at present, currently

niéarchǎnliàng

yearly production

nǚgōng

female worker

nǚlì

to be industrious; hard work

shèji

to design, to plan

shítáng

dining hall

shuǐdiànfèi

water and electric fee

'Sìge Xiàndàihuà'

'The Four Modernizations'

sùshè

dormitory

tuōérsuǒ

nursery school

yèyú

outside one's occupation,  
spare-time

yīliáo

medicine, medical treatment

zhàn

to occupy (a portion of an amount)

zhìzào

to manufacture

zhìzàochǎng

manufacturing plant, factory

zhǔxí

chairman

zhǔyì

principles, -ism

zhùzuò

writings, works



The first sentence in No. 2 is actually a sentence within a sentence. Wǒ xiǎng takes another whole sentence for an object, tāmen gōngzuòde yídìng hěn nǚlì. The word order of that embedded sentence is:

Subject	Action Verb	Marker	Adjectival Verb Phrase
Tāmen	gōngzuò	-de	yídìng hěn nǚlì

chǎng: 'factory, plant' This is short for gōngchǎng.

zhìzàochéng: 'to succeed in manufacturing, to successfully manufacture' This is another example of the verb chéng used in forming compound verbs. In Unit 3 you saw the verb liánchéng, 'to connect into, to connect to become', where -chéng meant 'to become'. Here you see a second meaning for -chéng 'to succeed, to accomplish'. Another translation for the sentence above might be 'By 1958 ... this factory succeeded in manufacturing a four-ton truck'. Note that the ending -chéng meaning 'to become' is optionally in the neutral tone, whereas the ending -chéng meaning 'to succeed, to accomplish' always has a full second tone.

Here are examples of each meaning of -chéng:

-chéng, 'to become'

Tā bǎ zhèige zì xiěchéng  
nèige zì le.

He wrote that character for  
this character.

Tā bǎ zhèige gǎichéng  
nèige le.

She changed this into that.

-chéng, 'to succeed, to accomplish'

Nèige gōngchǎng zuòchéngle  
yìzhǒng xīnde shǒubiǎo.

That factory succeeded in  
producing a new kind of watch.

Huì kāichéngle meiyǒu?

Did you succeed in having the  
meeting?

3. A: Xiànzài nǐmen néng  
zhìzào duōshao  
dūnde huòchē?

How heavy a truck are  
you able to build  
now?

B: Yījiǔqīyīnián yòu  
jīnyībù, kéyì  
zhìzào sānshìèr  
dūnde chē.

In 1971 again we made some  
progress and were able to  
manufacture trucks  
weighing 32 tons.

Note on No. 3

jìnyībù: 'to make some progress, to go a step further' Without the syllable yi inserted, this verb means 'to progress, to make headway'.

Tāde Yīngwén yòu jìnbù le.

He has made some more progress with his English.

Tā yòu tíchulai jige xūyào jìnyībù gǎigéde shēngchǎn wèntí.

He brought up some more production problems which need reform.

4. A: Nǐmen zhìzàode huòchē shì zài shénme dìfang yòngde?

Where are the trucks you build used?

B: Shì zài kuàngū yòngde.

They are used in mining areas.

Note on No. 4

kuàngū: 'mining area' Kuàng is the word for 'mine', and -gū is the syllable for 'region, area' as in dìgū, 'region', jiāoqū, 'suburbs', and shìqū, 'urban area'.

5. A: Mùqiándē niánchǎnliàng shì duōshao?

What is the yearly rate of production at present?

B: Yìqiānwǔbǎiduō liàng.

Over 1,500 trucks.

Notes on No. 5

mùqián: 'the present' Although both mùqián and xiànzài, 'now', refer to the present, mùqián refers to a wider period of time.

Mùqián wǒmen chǎngde shēngchǎn shuǐpíng hái bú gòu gāo.

At present our factory's production level isn't high enough yet.

Mùqián tāmen de shuǐkùli hái yǒu hěn duō yú.

At present there are still a lot of fish in their reservoir.

Xiànzài wǒ yào huí jiā le.

I'm going home now.

Xiànzài wǒ jiù zǒu.

I'll go right now.

liàng: This is the counter for cars, trucks, carriages, etc., but not trains or planes.

Jiào yíliàng tuōchē lái, bǎ  
chēzi tuōdào xiūlichāng qù.

Have a tow truck come and  
tow the car to the repair  
garage.

6. A: Nímende jīchuāng shì  
zìjǐ zhìzào de háishi  
jìnkǒu de?

Do you manufacture machine  
tools yourselves or are  
they imported?

B: Wǒmen hái yǒu yìxiē  
jiěfàng yǐqián liúxiá-  
laide jīqì.

We still have some machines  
left from before Liberation.

B: Búguò xiànzài yǒu jǐbù  
jīchuāng shì wǒmen zìjǐ  
shèjì zhìzào de.

But now we have several  
machine tools which we  
designed and manufactured  
ourselves.

#### Notes on No. 6

jīchuāng: 'machine tool, a machine which makes tools or other machines'

liúxiálai: 'to leave behind' The verb liú means 'to keep someone or something, to stay, remain'. Here are some examples:

Nǐ yào liú ge huàr ma?

Would you like to leave a  
message?

Wǒ jīntian liú ni chí fàn.

Stay for dinner today.

The directional verb xiàlai, 'to come down', has several meanings when used as part of a compound verb: 1) 'to come down and towards the speaker', as in nàxiálai, 'to bring down', 2) to show that the action of the main verb has resulted in a final or fixed state, as in xiěxiálai, 'to write down' or as here liúxiálai, 'to leave behind' For the first example, you need to know that yánjiùyuàn is 'graduate school'.

Wǒ yào liúxiálai, zhǔnbèi  
jìn yánjiùyuàn.

I'm going to stay behind and  
prepare to get into  
graduate school.

Zánmen liúxiálai ba! Wǒ  
xǐhuan zhèige dìfang!

Let's stay here! I like  
this place!

-bù: This is the counter for sets of books and units of machinery (for whole sets or whole bodies of things).

yíbù qìchē        one car  
 yíbù jīchuáng    one machine tool  
 yíbù jīqì        one machine  
 yíbù zìdiǎn     one set of dictionaries

Notice that car, qìchē, can be counted by either -bù or liàng.

7. A: Nǐmen zhèige gōngchǎng yǒu        How many women workers are  
       duōshao nǚgōng?                    there in this factory?
- B: Nǚgōng zhàn gōngrende                Women workers constitute  
       bǎifēn zhī èrshisān.                23 percent of the workers.

Notes on No. 7

zhàn: 'to occupy a space or an area, to occupy a proportion of an amount'

Zhànzhe xiàn ne!

The line is busy!

Zhěnggèr Gùgōng zhānde  
 miànji duō dà?

How much land does the whole  
 area of the Imperial Palace  
 occupy?

Měiguó nóngyè rénkǒu zhàn  
 quán guó rénkǒu bǎifēn  
 zhī sì.

The American rural population is  
 four percent of the total  
 national population.

bǎifēn zhī ...: '... percent' Here's how a more literal English translation corresponds to the Chinese:

...	percent	(English)
...	of	one hundred parts (literal English)
bǎifēn	zhī	... (Chinese)

8. B: Tāmen yě dānrèn gèjí                They also take on leadership  
       lǐngdǎo gōngzuò.                    work at every level.

Note on No. 8

dānrèn: 'to assume a position or responsibilities'

Tā bù néng dānrèn tài duō  
gōngzuò, tā shēntǐ bù hǎo.

He can't undertake too much  
work; his health is poor.

Tā dānrèn lǐngdǎo gōngzuò.

She is taking on leadership  
work.

9. A: Gōngren dōu yǒu shénme  
fúli?

What benefits do the workers  
have?

B: Yǒu gōngfèi yīliáo, hái  
yǒu chǎng bānde  
tuōérsuǒ, yòuéryuán,  
shítáng, shénmede.

They have free medical treatment,  
and also factory-run  
nurseries, kindergartens,  
dining halls, and so on.

10. A: Gōngrende gōngzuòfú shì  
gōngchǎng fāgei  
tamende ma?

Are the workers' work clothes  
issued to them by the  
factory?

B: Shìde. Chúle gōngzī yǐwài  
gōngchǎng hái fāgei  
tamen gōngzuòfú.

Yes. In addition to wages,  
the factory also issues  
work clothes to them.

Notes on No. 10

fāgei: 'to issue, to give out' Here you see another example  
of the verb gěi, 'to give' used in a compound verb. (You've also  
seen fēngei, 'to distribute' in Unit 6.)

11. A: Zhèige gōngchǎng yǒu  
gōngren sùshè ma?

Does this factory have  
dormitories for the  
workers?

B: Yǒu, gōngren jiāting dōu  
zhù jiāshù sùshè, méiyǒu  
jiāde gōngren zhù  
dānshēn sùshè.

Yes, workers' families all  
live in family dormitories,  
those workers without  
families live in singles'  
dormitories.

Notes on No. 11

sùshè: 'dormitory' This refers to students' dormitories as well  
as workers' dormitories.

jiāting and jiāshǔ: 'family' and 'family members', respectively. Although both of these words are translated as 'family', in the sentence above, jiāting refers to the family unit, the household, and jiāshǔ refers collectively to the individuals in the family, the family members.

12. A: Gōngren jiāo bu jiao fángzū hé shuǐdiànfèi? Do the workers pay rent and water and electric fees?
- B: Zhù jiāshǔ sùshède gōngren jiāo fángzū hé shuǐdiànfèi, zhù dānshēn sùshède gōngren zhǐ jiāo shuǐdiànfèi. The workers living in family dormitories pay rent and water and electric fees; workers living in singles' dormitories only pay water and electric fees.
13. A: Zhèrde gōngren yèyú shíjian xuéxí shénme? What do the workers here study in the time after work?
- B: Tāmen xuéxí Mǎ-Liè Zhǔyì, Máo Zhǔxí zhùzuò, hé bàozhǐ. Hái xuéxí xiānjìn de shēngchǎn jìshù. They study Marxist-Leninist principles, the works of Chairman Mao, and newspapers. They also study advanced production techniques.

Notes on No. 13

yèyú shíjian: 'in the time after work' Most people participate in study groups after work. As the exchange above indicates, the purpose of the study may vary. One important way of engaging in political study is the reading of the newspapers.

Mǎ-Liè Zhǔyì: 'Marxist-Leninist principles', Marxism-Leninism  
Mǎ-Liè is short for Mǎkèsī-Lièníng.

14. A: Zhèige gōngchǎng shi 'Gōngyè Xué Dàqīng'de xiānjìn dānwèi ma? Is this factory an advanced unit which 'In Industry Learns from Tach'ing'?
- B: Shìde, tāmen wèile fāzhǎn 'Sìge Xiàndàihuà' nǚlì gōngzuò. Yes, they work hard in order to expand 'The Four Modernizations'.



Notes on No. 14

'Gōngyè Xué Dàqīng': 'In Industry Learn from Tach'ing' This is a slogan which came out in 1962. It encourages all who are involved in industry to learn from the model Tach'ing oilfields in Heilungkiang. This slogan is used as part of a three-part slogan:

Nóngyè Xué Dàzhài!  
Gōngyè Xué Dàqīng!  
Quán Guó Xué Jiěfàngjūn!

In Agriculture Learn from Tachai!  
In Industry Learn from Tach'ing!  
Let the whole country learn  
from the Liberation Army!

'Sìge Xiàndàihuà': 'The Four Modernizations' This slogan refers to the need for modernization in four high-priority areas. These areas are agriculture, industry, scientific technology, and defense. The plan is to achieve a level of advancement which is on a par with the developed countries of the world by the year 2000.

## Unit 8, Tape 1 Review Dialogue

In 1973 an American visits a Shanghai truck factory. One of the staff members of the factory introduces the factory's situation and chats.

- C: Wǒmen zhèige gōngchǎng jiào  
Shànghǎi Huòchē Zhìzào chǎng.  
Zhèige chǎng Jiěfàng yǐqián  
jiù shì yíge xiūlichǎng.  
Jīngguo gōngrén, jìshù rényuán  
hé gānbùde nǚlì, dào yìjiūwūbā-  
nián wǒmen zhèige chǎng zhìzào-  
chéng sīdūn zhōngde huòchē.  
Dào yìjiūliùjiūnián kāishǐ  
shēngchǎn shíwūdūn zhōngde.  
yìjiūqīyīnián yǒu jīnyībù,  
kéyì zhìzào sānshíèrdūn zhōng  
kuāngqū yǒngde chē.
- Our factory is called the  
Shanghai Truck Manufactur-  
ing Factory. Before  
Liberation this factory  
was just a repair plant. By  
1958, through the hard  
work of the workers,  
technicians and cadres,  
this factory manufactured  
a 4 ton truck.  
In 1969 we began to manufacture  
15-ton trucks.  
In 1971 again we pro-  
gressed, being able to  
manufacture a 32 ton  
truck to be used in  
mining areas.
- A: Měinián shēngchǎn duōshao  
liàng?
- How many do you produce  
every year?
- C: Mùqiándè niánchǎnliàng shì  
yìqiānwūbǎiduō liàng.
- At present the yearly  
production is more than  
1500.
- A: Nǐmende jīchuáng shì zìjǐ  
zhìzào de háishì jìnkǒude?
- Do you manufacture machine tools  
yourselves or are they imported?
- C: Wǒmen hái yǒu xiē Jiěfàng  
yǐqián liúxiàlaide jīqì, búguò  
lǎo gōngrén, jìshù rényuán  
zìjǐ yě shèjìle jīchuáng.  
Xiànzài yǒu jǐbù jīchuáng shì  
wǒmen zìjǐ shèjì zhìzào de.  
Děng yìhuìr nǐn kéyì kàndào.  
Wǒmen zhèige chǎng yǒu  
liǎngqiān zhīgōng.
- We still have some machines  
left from before Liberation,  
but the older workers and  
technicians have also designed  
machine tools themselves. Now we  
have several machine tools  
which we designed and  
produced ourselves. In a little  
while you can see them.  
Our plant has 2000 staff and  
workers.

- A: Yǒu nǚgōng ma? Are there women workers?
- C: Yǒu. Nǚgōng zhàn bǎifēn zhǐ èrshísān. Tāmen dōu dānrèn gè zhǒng gōngzuò. Gējī língdǎo yě yǒu nǚtóngzhǐ. Yes. Women workers constitute 23 per cent. They take on all kinds of work. There are also female comrades at every level of leadership.
- A: Gōngren dōu yǒu shénme fúlì? What benefits do the workers have?
- C: Chūle gōngzī yǐwài, gōngchǎng hái fāgei tāmen gōngzuòfú, yǒu gōngfèi yīliáo, chǎng bānde tuōérsuǒ, yòuéryuán, shítáng shenmede. In addition to wages, the factory gives them uniforms, government-sponsored free medical treatment, factory-run nurseries, kindergartens, dining halls, and so on.
- A: Děng yìhuǐr nín dōu dài wǒ qù kànkan ba? In a while will you take me to see all of it?
- C: Shì, yě qǐng nǐ qù cānguān yíxia gōngren sùshè, fǎngwèn gōngrende jiāting. Yǒu jiāde zhù jiāshǔ sùshè, méiyǒu jiāde zhù dānshēn sùshè. Yes, and we'll ask you to tour the workers' dormitories, and to visit the workers' households. Those who have families live in family member dormitories; those who don't live in the singles' dormitory.
- A: Jiāo bu jiao fángzū? Do they pay rent?
- C: Jiāo yìdiǎr. Jiāshǔ sùshè sānkuàiqián zuǒyòu yíge yuè. Dānshēn sùshè jiù jiāo qībāmáoqiānde shuǐ-diànfèi. Yes, a little. Family member dormitories are about \$3 a month. In singles' dormitories, they only pay a water and electric fee of seventy or eighty cents.
- A: Gōngren měige xīngqī shàng jítīān bān? How many days a week do the workers work?
- C: Měige xīngqī liùtiān, měitiān bā xiǎoshí. Six days a week, eight hours a day.
- A: Yě yǒu xuéxí ba? And is there study, too?

C: Yǒu, měi xīngqī yǒu sìcì  
yèyu xuéxí.

Yes, four times a week  
there is after-work  
study.

A: Tāmen dōu xuéxí shénme?

And what do they study?

C: Měixīngqī yǒu liǎngcì xuéxí  
xiānjìn de jìshù, yǒu  
liǎngcì xuéxí Mǎ-Liè  
zhǔyì, Máo Zhǔxí zhǔzuò,  
huòzhě bàozhǐ.  
Zěnmeyàng wǒmen xiān qù  
cānguān? Cānguān yǐhòu, hái  
yǒu shénme wèntí zài tántan,  
hǎo bu hao?

Twice a week they study  
advanced technology.  
Twice a week they study  
Marxist-Leninist principles,  
the writings of Chairman  
Mao, or the newspapers.  
How about if we first go  
visit it? After we visit,  
if there are any other  
questions, we can talk  
some more, okay?

A: Hǎo.

Okay.

Unit 8, Tape 2 WorkbookExercise 1

This exercise is a review of the reference list sentences in this . The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the sentence list will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise a foreign student in China talks with a friend about his visit to the Wuhan Iron and Steelworks, and describes what he saw in the plant, and such things as workers' benefits, etc.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely you might want to rewind the tape and answer the questions on page 193 as you listen to it a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Wūhàn Dàxué.	Wuhan University
Wūhàn Gāngtiě Chǎng	Wuhan Iron and Steel Plant
jīxiè	to mechanize
gāolú	blast furnace
zìdònghuà	to automate
chǎngzhǎng	director of a factory
chējiān	workshop
gōngzuòmào	workhats, helmets
láodòng bǎohù	worker's insurance
chǎnjià	maternity leave
wèinǎi	to nurse, to feed milk
yǐnèi	within
píngděng	equality
nánnǚ píngděng	equality of the sexes

Exercise 3

In this exercise the Chinese representative, after having spoken about the

factory where he works, asks the American visitor to talk about the situation in American factories. The American then describes the details of a textile factory in Pennsylvania.

Listen to the conversation once straight through, then listen a second time and turn to page 193 and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

shǔjià	summer vacation
fǎngzhīchǎng	textile factory
sānbān	three shifts
sānbān dǎode gōngchǎng	a factory with three changing shifts
zìdònghuà	to automate
xīnshuì	salary
jiābān	to add extra work, to work overtime
qīng gōngzuò	light work
yīyào bǎoxiǎn	medical insurance
gōnglì yòuéryuán	public kindergarten
mǎ	yard (unit of measurement)

#### Exercise 4

In this exercise a foreign student talks with a Chinese student about her visit to the Shanghai watch factory. Afterwards they decide to have dinner together.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then on the second time through answer the questions found on page 194 .

For this exercise you will need the following new words and phrases:

shǒubiǎo	wrist watch
quēfá	to lack
gōngjù	tools
gànjìn	vigor, energy, enthusiasm for work
jìxù	to continue

## Unit 8

Sūlián	the Soviet Union
zhìqì	will, ambition
zuànshí	diamond
chējiān	workshop
Mǎkèsī-Lièníng zhǔyì	Marxist-Leninist principles
hǎoxiàng	to resemble, as if
zhǐ	(counter for watches)

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Describe the size of the Wuhan Iron and Steelworks.
2. When was the Wuhan Iron and Steelworks built?
3. Why does Blast Furnace Number 4 make an impression on the visitor?
4. Does a heavy industry factory like the Wuhan Iron and Steelworks have only male workers?
5. What kind of benefits do the workers get?
6. Is there discrimination against women in the plant?
7. Where do the workers live?
8. Do all the workers pay rent? If not, which do and which do not?

After answering these questions yourself, take a look at the translation for this conversation found on page 195, then listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. How does the speaker know about the situation of a textile factory?
2. How large was the factory?
3. Were there shift rotations in the factory? How many workers were on each shift?

4. Was production automated in the factory? Did this affect the type of work that women workers did?
5. How much did the workers earn?
6. What sort of benefits did the workers have and which did they lack?
7. Where did the workers live?
8. What was the yearly production of the factory?

After having answered these questions, take a look at the translation for this dialogue found on page 197 . You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

#### Questions for Exercise 4

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where did the foreign student visit?
2. Was the factory always a watch factory? When did they begin to manufacture watches?
3. What were the watches they first produced like?
4. When did the quality of the watches improve?
5. How many workers are there in the factory?
6. Do the workers participate in study after work? If so, what do they study?

After having answered these questions, look on page 199 for the translation to this dialogue, then listen again to the conversation to help you practice saying your answers orally.



Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

- F: Jintian wǒmen qù cānguān  
Wūhàn Dàxué zěnme méi kàn-  
jian nǐ?
- M: Wǒ yǒu yíge péngyou dài wo qù  
kàn Wūhàn Gāngtiě Chǎng qù le.
- F: Wūhàn Gāngtiě Chǎng dà bu da?
- M: Hěn dà. Quán chǎng zhǐgōng  
yígōng yǒu liùwànduō rén.  
Chǎngli yǒu yíge dàxué, sìge  
zhōngxué, wúshíduōge xiǎoxué,  
yòueryuán, hé tuōérsuǒ. Hái  
yǒu shāngdiàn, cài shichǎng,  
shēnméde. Jiù xiàng yíge  
xiǎo chéng.
- F: Eng, hěn yǒu yìsi. Nǐ néng bu  
neng gěi wo duō jiǎngyíjiǎng  
nàrde qíngkuàng?
- M: Hǎo. Wūhàn Gāngtiě Chǎng shì  
Jiěfàng yǐhòu Yījiǔwūsānnián  
cái kāishǐ jiànzhùde, xiàn-  
zài shēngchǎn gāngtiě hé  
jīxiè. Wǒmen cānguānle  
Dìsìhào Gāolú. Shì Zhōngguó  
zìjǐ zhìzào chūlaide. Bǐ dìyī,  
èr, sānhào gāolú dà yíbèi.  
Shēngchǎn zìdònghuà. Zhǐ yǒu  
wǔliùge gōngrén zài nàli  
gōngzuò.
- Wūhàn Gāngtiě Chǎng shì yíge  
zhòng gōngyè gōngchǎng. Wǒ  
yǐqián xiǎng gōngrén yǐnggāi  
dōu shì nánde. Kěshì dào le  
nàli chǎngzhǎng gào su wǒmen  
gōngrénlǐ yǒu bǎifēnzhīsìshí  
shì nǚgōng. Wǒ zài yíge chējiān  
kànjian liǎngge hěn gāode rén  
zài bān zhòng dōngxi. Tāmen  
dōu chuānzhe gōngzuòfú, dài zhe  
gōngzuòmào. Wǒ xiǎng tāmen  
yíding shì nánde. Hòulái gēn  
tāmen shuōhuà, cái fāxiàn  
tāmen shì nǚde.
- How come we didn't see you when we  
went to visit Wuhan University  
today?
- A friend of mine took me see the  
Wuhan Iron and Steelworks.
- Is the Wuhan Iron and Steelworks  
large?
- Yes it is. In the whole plant there  
are over 60,000 staff and workers.  
In the plant there is a university,  
four middle schools, and over fifty  
elementary schools, kindergartens,  
and nurseries. There are also  
stores, a market, and so on. It's  
just like a little city.
- Hm, very interesting. Can you tell  
me some more about the situation  
there?
- All right. The Wuhan Steelworks wasn't  
started until after Liberation,  
in 1953. Now it produces iron and  
steel and machinery. We visited  
Blast Furnace Number 4. It was  
manufactured in China itself.  
It's twice as big as Blast  
Furnaces Numbers 1, 2, or 3. Prod-  
uction is automated. There were  
only five or six workers working  
there.
- The Wuhan Steelworks is a heavy  
industry factory. I used to  
think that workers should all  
be men. But when we got there  
the plant director told us that  
forty percent of the workers were  
women. In a workshop I saw two  
tall people moving heavy things.  
They were both wearing work clothes  
and had work helmets on. I thought  
for sure they were men. It was not  
until we talked with them after-  
wards that I discovered they were  
women.

- Gōngrende fúli bānde hěn hǎo.  
 Chúle gōngzī yǐwài yǒu  
lǎodòng bǎohù; kàn bǐng, chī yào,  
shēng háizǐ, zhù yīyuán dōu bú  
 yào qián. Nǚgōng shēng hái  
 zǐ yǒu wúshíliù tiān chǎnjiǎ.  
 Shàng bān yǐhòu rúguo māma zìjǐ  
wèinǎi, zài háizi yísuì yǐnèi  
 měitiān hái gěi tāmen yíge  
 xiǎoshíde wèinǎi shíjian.
- The workers benefits are handled very well. Besides their wages there is insurance, so they don't have to pay when they see a doctor, get medicine, have children, or go to the hospital. When a woman worker has a baby she gets 56 days of maternity leave. After she goes back to work, if the mother herself nurses, she is also given an hour of nursing time everyday for the child's first year.
- Nǚgōng dānrèn gèjí gōngzuò, yǒude  
 yě dānrèn lǐngdǎo gōngzuò.  
 Tāmen zài zhèngzhìshàng,  
 jīngjìshàng hé wénhuàshàng  
 dōu zuòdaole nǎnnǚ píngděng.
- The female workers take on work at every level; some also take on leadership work. They have achieved equality of the sexes in politics, economics and culture.
- F: Gōngren zhùde dìfang zěnmeyàng?  
 Nǐ kànle méiyǒu?
- What are the workers living quarters like? Did you see them?
- M: Wǒ kànle. Gōngren dōu zhùzài  
 sùshèlǐ. Yǒu jiāshùde zhù  
 jiāshù sùshè, méiyǒu jiāshùde  
 zhù dānshēn sùshè.
- Yes. The workers all live in dormitories. Those with families live in family dormitories, and those without families live in the single persons' dormitories.
- F: Tāmen yào bu yào jiāo fángzǔ?
- Do they have to pay rent?
- M: Zhù jiāshù sùshède yào jiāo,  
 kěshì jiāode hěn shǎo. Měige  
 yuè sānsìkuai qián. Zhù  
 dānshēn sùshède měige yuè jiù  
 jiāo jǐmáo qiánde shuǐdiàn fèi.
- Those who live in the family dormitories do, but they pay very little. Three or four dollars per month. Those who live in the single persons' dormitories only pay a few dimes' worth of water and electric fees every month.
- F: Xièxie nǐ gàosu wǒ zhènmé duō  
 guānyu Wúhàn Gāngtiě Chǎngde  
 qǐngkuàng. Zhēn kěxǐ wǒ méi  
 néng gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù. Guò  
 liǎngtiān wǒ xīwang tāmen gěi  
 wǒ ānpái yíxia. Wǒ yě xiǎng  
 qù cānguān cānguān.
- Thanks for telling me so much about the Wuhan Iron and Steelworks. It's too bad the I couldn't go with you. I hope they'll arrange it for me in a couple of days. I'd like to go visit there too.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

- M: Nǐ cānguānle hěn duō wǒmende gōngchǎng. Wǒmen yě xiǎng zhīdao nǐmen Měiguó gōngchǎngde qíngkuàng. Nǐ qùguo gōngchǎng ma?
- You've visited a lot of our factories. We would also like to know about your factories in America. Have you been to any factories?
- F: Guānyu Měiguó gōngchǎngde qíngkuàng wǒ zhīdaode bù duō. Kěshi wǒ zài shàng dàxuéde shíhou, yǒu yíge shǔjià wǒ zài Bīnzhōu yíge fǎngzhīchǎng gōngzuòle liǎngge yuè. Wǒ zhīdao yìxiē nèige gōngchǎngde qíngkuàng.
- I don't know a lot about the situation in American factories. But when I was in college, I worked for two months in a textile factory in Pennsylvania one summer vacation. I know a little about the situation in that factory.
- M: Hǎo. Hěn hǎo. Nǐ néng bu neng gàoosu wǒ yìxia nèige gōngchǎngde qíngkuàng?
- Good, very good. Can you tell me about the situation there?
- F: Hǎo. Nèige fǎngzhīchǎng miànji dàgài yǒu sānwàn wǔqiānduō píngfāngchǐ. Shi yíge èrshìsì xiǎoshí sānbāndǎode gōngchǎng. Měi yíban yǒu wǔbǎiduōge gōngren. Yígōng jiù shì yìqiānliùbǎiduō gōngren. Gōngrenlǐ sānfēn zhǐ èr shì nǚgōng. Gōngchǎng shēngchǎn zìdònghuà. Jīqī dōu shì wǒmen Měiguó shèjì zhìzào de. Gōngrende xīnshuǐ píngjūn měi xiǎoshí sīkuai wǔmáoqián. Tāmen yíge xīngqī gōngzuò wǔtiān, yě jiù shì gōngzuò sìshí xiǎoshí. Rúguo jiābān jiù gěi yíbèi bànde qián.
- All right. The area of the textile factory was 35,000 square feet. It was a factory with three rotating shifts operating twenty-four hours. There were over 500 workers on each shift; altogether there were 1,600 workers. Two thirds of the workers were women. The production of the factory was automated. The machines were all designed and manufactured in America. A worker's salary was on the average four dollars and fifty cents an hour. They worked five days a week, or forty hours. They received time and a half for overtime.
- M: Nǚgōng shì bu shì dānrèn gèjǐ gōngzuò?
- Did women workers do all levels of work?
- F: Bú shì. Yīnwei yǒu jīqī, shēngchǎn zìdònghuà, nǚgōng zhǐ zuò qīng gōngzuò. Zhōngde gōngzuò dōu shì nán gōngren zuò.
- No, because there were machines and production was automated, the female workers only did the light work. Heavy work was all done by male workers.

- M: Gōngrende fúli zěnmeyàng? Yǒu yīyào bǎoxiǎn, sùshè, shítáng, tuōěrsuǒ, yòuéryuán, shénmede ma?
- F: Gōngrende yīyào bǎoxiǎnfèi gōngchǎng gěi bǎifēn zhǐ wúshí. Gōngren méiyǒu sùshè, shítáng, tuōěrsuǒ, yòuéryuán, shénmede. Háizi dào le wúsui jiù kéyì shàng gōnglì yòu-éryuán. Gōngren rúguo zài gōngzuòde shíhou shòushāng, tāmen bù gōngzuò yě kéyì nà xīnshuǐ. Yǒude shíhou gōngrende jiāshù yě zài nèige gōngchǎnglì gōngzuò.
- M: Nèige gōngchǎng niánchǎnliàng shì duōshao?
- F: Nèige shíhou dàgài shì sānbǎiliùshíduōwàn<sup>mǎ</sup>. Zhèixiē liàozi zhǔyào shì guónèi yòng.
- M: Nǐmende gōngchǎng gēn wǒmende gōngchǎng yǒu hěn duō dìfang bú yíyàng.
- F: Duì le.
- M: Nǐ yào xiūxi yìhuǐr ba. Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng zài lái zhǎo nǐ.
- F: Hǎo.
- How are the workers' benefits? Are there medical insurance, dormitories, dining halls, nurseries, kindergartens, and so on?
- Fifty percent of the workers' insurance fees are payed by the factory. The workers don't have dormitories, dining halls, nurseries, kindergartens, and so on. When the children reach five years old they can attend the public kindergarten. If workers are injured on the job, they receive their salary without working. Sometimes members of the worker's family also work in the factory.
- How much was the yearly production of the factory?
- At that time, it was about 3,600,000 yards. The fabrics were mainly for use within the country.
- There are a lot of differences between your factories and ours.
- Yes.
- Why don't you rest awhile. I'll come back for you at two o'clock.
- All right.

## Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

M: Jīntiān nǐ dào nàli cānguān  
qu le?

Where did you go visit today?

F: Wǒ dào Shànghǎi shǒubiǎochǎng  
qu cānguān qu le.

I went to the Shanghai watch  
factory.

M: Zhèige gōngchǎng zěnmeyàng?

What's it like?

F: Guīmo bù xiǎo.

It's pretty large-scale.

M: Nǐ néng bu néng gěi wo shuō  
nàrde qīngkuāng ?

Can you tell me about the situation  
there?

F: Hǎo. ...Tāmen gào su wo,  
jiěfàng yǐqián Zhōngguó bù  
huì shēngchǎn shǒubiǎo.  
Shǒubiǎo dōu shì jìnkǒude.  
Yījiūwǔwūnián Shànghǎi Shǒu-  
biǎochǎng chénglìde shíhòu,  
zhǐ yǒu wǔshíduōge huì xiūli  
shǒubiǎode jìshù rényuán zài  
yìqǐ shìzhe shēngchǎn shǒu-  
biǎo.

All right. ...They told me that  
before Liberation China could  
not produce watches. All watches  
were imported. In 1955, when the  
Shanghai Watch Factory was estab-  
lished, there were only fifty or  
so watch-repair technicians who,  
together, tried to produce watches.

Shǒubiǎo hěn bù róngyì zuò. Zài  
quēfá jìshù, quēfá gōngjù,  
quēfá cáiliào de qīngkuāng xià  
jiù gèng kùnnán, kěshì gōngrén-  
men gānjìn hěn dà, zài Yījiū-  
wǔwūnián Shíyue jiù shēngchǎnle  
shíliùge shǒubiǎo. Tāmen zìjǐ  
yě shuō zhèixiē shǒubiǎo bù  
tài hǎo. Fāngzai zhuōzishang  
huì zǒu, dàizai shǒushang jiù  
bù huì zǒu le. Búguò gōng-  
rénmen jìxù nǜlì.

Watches aren't easy to make.  
Working under the conditions  
where they lacked technical  
skills, tools, and materials,  
it was even more difficult.  
But the workers had a lot of  
enthusiasm for the work. In October  
of 1955 they produced only sixteen  
watches. They themselves said  
the watches weren't too good.  
They would run if they were  
left on a table. But if you  
put them on your wrist, then  
they wouldn't go any more.  
But the workers kept on working  
hard.

Dào Yījiūwǔbānián shēngchǎn-  
chulaide shǒubiǎo, jiù hǎo duō  
le, chǎnliàng yě duō le. Kěshì  
zài zhèige shíhòu hěn duō  
cáiliào hái dēi jìnkǒu. Zhǔyào  
cóng Sūlián jìnkǒu. Yījiūliùlíng-  
nián Sūlián bù zài bǎ zhèixiē  
dōngxī mǎigei Zhōngguó. Kěshì  
Zhōngguó gōngrén yǒu zhìqì,  
mǎibudào jiù zìjǐ zuò. Zhǐ shì  
shǒubiǎo lì nèi xiǎoxiǎo de zuànshí  
yě yòngle yìniánduō de shíjiān

By 1958, the watches being produced  
were much better, and the quantity  
of production was also raised.  
But at that time they still had  
to import a lot of materials,  
mainly from the Soviet Union.  
In 1960 the Soviet Union stopped  
selling these things to China,  
but the Chinese workers were  
ambitious. Since they couldn't  
buy them, they made them them-  
selves. It took over a year

cái zhìzào chulai. Yíjiǔ-  
liùliùnián shǒubiǎo nián-  
chǎnliàng shí jiǔshíwàn zhī.  
Yíjiǔqīlíngnián tígāodao  
liǎngbǎiwàn zhī. Xiànzài  
zhèige shǒubiǎochǎngde hěn duō  
chējiàn dōu zìdòng huà le.

just to manufacture the little  
diamond in the watch. In 1966  
the yearly production of watches  
was 900,000. In 1970 it was up  
to 2,000,000. Now a lot of the  
workshops in the watch factory  
are automated.

M: Mùqián tāmen yǒu duōshao  
gōngren?

How many workers do they have at  
present?

F: Mùqián tāmen yǒu sānqiān-  
liùbǎiduō zhí gōng.

At present they have over 3,600  
staff members and workers.

M: Wǒ cānguānguo hěn duō gōng-  
chǎng. Zhí gōngmen dōu yǒu  
yèyú xuéxí. Zhèige chǎngde  
zhí gōngmen yě yǒu yèyú xuéxí  
ma?

I've visited a lot of factories.  
The staff members and workers  
all have outside study. Do the  
staff and workers of this factory  
have outside study too?

F: Yǒu. Tāmen de mùdì shì yào  
jìnyībù tígāo jìshù. Tāmen  
yě xuéxí zhèngzhì. Zhǔyào  
shì xuéxí Mǎkèsī-Lièníng  
zhǔyì hé Máo Zhǔxí zhǔzuò.

Yes, they do. Their goal is to  
make some progress in raising  
technology. They also study  
politics, most importantly  
Marxism-Leninism and the works  
of Chairman Mao.

M: Hěn bú cuò. Nǐ jiǎngde zhènme  
qīngchū, wǒ hǎoxiàng  
qīnyǎn kànjianle yíyàng.

That's pretty good. You've ex-  
plained it so clearly, it's  
as if I had seen it myself.

F: Nǐ chīguo wǎnfàn le ma?

Have you had dinner yet?

M: Méiyǒu.

No.

F: Nà wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī ba?

Then let's go eat together, okay?

Vocabulary

à	Oh!
a	(intonation carrier)
aǐ	to be short
ài	to love
àikèsī guāng	x-ray
àiren	spouse
Alǐshān	Mt. Ali
àn	to press
àn	according to
Āndàluè	Ontario
àn guīju	according to regulations
ānjìng	to be peaceful
ānpái	to arrange, to settle
ānpáihǎo le	successfully arranged
ānquán	safety
Anshān	the name of a city in Manchuria which is an industrial center
ānzhào	according to
Ayí	auntie
bā	eight
bá	to extract, to pull
bǎ	(counter for things with handles)
bǎ	(object marker)
ba	(statement softener)
ba	(imperative softener), let's
bāba	papa, dad
Bābǎo Fàn	Eight Jewel Rice
Bādǎlǐng (Bādǎlǐng)	Pataling, area northwest of

	Peking where the Great Wall is located
-bǎi	hundred
bái	to be white
báicài	cabbage
bǎifēn zhī...	...percent
bǎihuò dālóu	department store
-bān	(counter for trips of regularly scheduled vehicles)
-bān	class (of students)
bān	to move (a thing with both hands)
bàn	half past the hour
bàn	and a half
bàn	to manage, to handle, to do, to take care of
bàn _____	half of a _____
bānfǎ	method, way
bāng	to help
bāng máng	to help
bāngōngshì(-shǐ)	office
bāngzhu	to help; aid
bān jiā	to move one's residence
bānlái bānqù	to move back and forth
bànshìchù	office
bànyè	midnight
bǎo	to be satisfied (from eating)
bào	to explode
bào (yí fèn)	newspaper
báobǐng	thin wheat pancake
bǎocún	to preserve, to keep
bǎoguǎn	to safeguard, to put



bāoguǒ	in safekeeping
bǎohù	package
bàoqiàn	to protect; insurance
	to be sorry (for not fulfilling one's own social responsibilities)
bǎoxiǎn	to protect by insurance
	to insure
bǎoxiǎngāng	bumper
bǎoyāng	to have a maintenance checkup
bào zhǐ (yīfèn)	newspaper
bāozi	steamed rolls made of bread dough with a filling of meat and/or vegetables, or sweet bean paste
Bāyue (Bāyue)	August
-bèi	times, -fold (i.e., three-fold)
běi	north
bèi	by (indicating the one who carries out the action in a passive sentence)
běibù	northern part
běifāng	northern area
Běijīng Fàndiàn	Peking Hotel
Běijīngshì	Municipality of Peking
Běijīngshìqū	city of Peking
Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn	Peking Exhibition Hall
bēishí	commemorative stone tablet
bèitāi	spare tire
Běitóu Shēngchǎn Dàduì	Peit'ou Production Brigade
-běn(r)	volume (counter of books and magazines)
běnsì	this city
bǐ (yìzhǐ)	pen
bǐ	compared with
-bian(r)	side, edge
biàn	to change
biàncheng	to change into
biànfàn	simple, informal meal
biànsùqì	gear shift
biǎo (yìzhāng)	form, application

biǎoyǎn	to give a demonstration
biāozhǔn	level or standard
bìchú	closet, wall chest
bìchúli	in the closet
bié	don't
biě	to be dented
biě	to be flattened, to be sunken (of a tire)
biéde	other, another, different
biéde dìfang	another place
biéde shíhou	another time
bié kèqi	don't be formal, don't stand on ceremony
biéren	another person, someone else
bìjī	serge
bǐjiǎo (bǐjiào)	comparatively, relatively
bǐng	to become ill
bǐnggān	cookies
bǐngfáng	infirmary room
bǐngkuài(r) (yíge)	ice cube
bǐngxiāng	refrigerator
bìyè	to graduate
bǐyībǐ	to compare
bówugǎn	museum
bōxuē	to exploit; exploitation
-bù	(counter for cars or buses); (counter for units of machines)
bù	cotton cloth
bù/bú	not
bú bì	not necessary, don't
bú cuò	not bad, that's right
bú dà hǎomǎi	not very easy to buy
búdàn...yě...	not only ... but also...
bùfen	part, portion
búguò	but, however
bù hǎo yìsi	to be embarrassing
bú kèqi	you're welcome
bùpiào	cotton ration coupon
bù qiǎo	untimely, inopportune, "I couldn't make that"
bú shi	not to be

bù shūfu	not to feel well
bú xiè	don't mention it
bú yào	don't
bù yídìng	it's not definite
bú yòng	no need to
bú zài le	to be deceased
bù zēnme	not especially
bùzhāng	minister (of a government organization)
bùzhi	interior decor

cā	to wipe
cái	then and only then, not until
cài	food, dishes of cooked food, main dishes
càidānzi (yìzhāng)	menu
cáifengdiàn	tailor shop
cáiliào	materials
cǎisè	color, colored
càishìchǎng	market
cānchē	dining car
cānguān	to observe, to visit

cānjiā	to attend, to participate in
cāntīng	dining room
-céng	(counter for floors of buildings)
cèsuǒ	toilet
chá	tea
chá	to look up (information)
chà	to lack, before the hour
chábēi	teacup
chābuduǒ	almost, about, approximately
chāidiào	to tear down
cháng	to taste, to savor
chǎng	factory
chǎng bānde	factory-run

chángchang	often
Chángchéng	The Great Wall
chàng gē	to sing
Changlíng	The Ch'ang Tomb
Changpíng Xiàn	Ch'angping county (north of Peking)
chǎngzhǎng	director of a factory
chǎnjià	maternity leave
chǎnliàng	amount of production
cháo	to, towards
chǎo	fried, to fry, saute
cháodài	dynasty
chǎo miàn	fried noodles
cháoshī	to be humid
chāo sù	to speed, to exceed the speed limit
cháyè	tea leaves
chāzi	fork
chē	a bus, any wheeled vehicle
chēfáng	garage
chēhuò	car accident
chējiān	workshop
chēmén	car door
chéng	city
chéng	to become
chéngji	achievement
chéngli	in the city
chénglì	to establish
chéngqiáng	defense wall, city wall
chènshān	shirt
chéngshì	city
chēshēn	car body
chētóu	car hood
chī	to eat
chī	to take (medicine)
chǐ	a Chinese foot (unit of measurement)
chībuzháo	can't find to eat
Chīdelái ma?	Is it all right for you (to eat)?
chī fàn	to eat, to have a meal
chìjiǎo	barefoot; to go barefoot
chìjiǎo yīsheng	'barefoot doctor'

chōngfèn	fully
chōuti	drawer
chōutili	in the drawer
chū	to exit
chuān	to wear
chuán	boat, ship
Chuān Càì	Szechuan School of Chinese Cooking
chuáng	bed
chuàng (zhuàng)	to bump into, to collide with
chuànguài le	to be damaged
chuàngzào	to create
chuàngzàolì	creative ability, creativity
chū chāi	to go on a business trip
chùchù	everywhere
chúfáng	kitchen
chūjí	beginning stage, elementary level
chūkǒu	to export
chūkǒu gōngsī	export company
chūlai	to come out, to appear
chúle...yǐwài	aside from, in addition to
chùlǐ (chǔlǐ)	to handle, to manage
chū mén	to go out, to go out of town
chūntian	spring
chūqu	to go out
chū shì	to have an accident
chūtǔ wénwù	archaeological find, archaeological object
chūtǔ wénwù zhǎnlǎn	exhibition of archaeological finds
chùzhǎng	division chief
chūzūqìchē	taxi (Peking)
-cì	occasion, time
cōng	scallion
cóng	from
Cōngbào Niúròu	Beef with Spring Onions
cōngming	to be intelligent
cóngqián	before, previously
cù	vinegar
cuò	to make a mistake, to be wrong
dǎ	to make
dǎ	to hit

dà	to be large
dàchén	chief statesman, high minister
dǎdao	to make a phone call to
dǎ diànhuà	to make a phone call, to telephone
dàduì	brigade, as in production brigade
dàduōshù	the great majority
dàfàndiàn	hotel
dàgài	probably, approximately
Dàhuá Cāntīng	Great China Restaurant
dài	to bring, to bring with one, to carry on one's body, to wear, to take with one
dài biǎo	to wear a watch
dàibiǎotuán	delegation
dàifu	doctor
Dàhuá Cāntīng	Great China Restaurant
dàjiā	everyone
dàjiē	boulevard
dǎkāi	to open
Dàlǐ Jiē	Dali Street (Taipei)
dàlǐtáng	auditorium
dàlóu	building
dàmén(r)	entrance
dàmén(r)	gate
dǎng	party (political)
dāngmiàn	in person, face to face
dāngrán	naturally, of course
dānrèn	to assume (a position or responsibilities)
dānrénfáng	single room
dānshēn	alone, single (of a person)
dànshi	but, however
dānwèi	unit
dānzi	ticket, note
-dào	(counter for a course of a meal)
dào	to arrive
dào	to, towards
dào	route, path

dào xǐ	to congratulate
dǎoyóu	tourist guide
dāozi	knife
dǎ qì	to add air
dǎqìtǒng	air pump
dàren	adult
dàshǐ	ambassador
dàshì	important affairs
dàshiguǎn	embassy
dāsuan	to plan to
dǎting	to inquire about, to ask about
Dàtóng	Tat'ung, a city in northern Shansi Province
Dàtóng Rénmín Gōngshè	Tat'ung People's Commune
dàxué	university
dàxuéshēng	college student
dàyī	overcoat
dàyuē	approximately, about
dǎ yùfáng zhēn	to give inoculations
Dàzhài	Tachai (the name of a model commune)
dǎ zhēn	to give an injection
-de	(possessive marker)
-de	(marker of modification)
-de-	to be able to
dé	to get, to obtain
-deduō	more (following a verb)
Déguo	Germany
děi	must
dēng	light, lamp
děng	to wait, to wait for
dēngjì	to register, (at a hotel, etc.)
dēngjìzhèng	car registration
dēngyíděng	to wait a moment
dēng yìhuìr	in a while
dēngyú	to be equal to, to be equivalent
-de shíhou	when
Déwen	German language
dì-	used in forming cardinal numbers (i.e., <u>dìyī</u> , 'the first')
dì	ground, earth
-diǎn	(counter for hours on the clock)
diǎn(r)	a little, some

diǎn  
diàn  
diànbào  
Diànbào Dàlóu  
diānhuà

diānhuàbù  
diānhuà hàomǎ(r)  
diànlíng

diànshàn  
diànshì  
diàntī  
diǎnxin (yíkuài)  
diànyǐng(r)  
diànyǐngyuàn  
dìdi  
dìèrtiān  
dìfang  
dìli  
dìng

dìnghǎo le

Dìnglíng  
dìng yìzhuō xí

dìqū  
dìquèliáng  
dītǎn (yìzhāng)  
dītú (yìzhāng)  
diū  
dìxià  
dìxià huǒchē  
dìxià xíngren dào  
dìxíng  
dìyīcì (dìyíci)  
Dìyī Gōngsī  
dìzhǐ  
dìzhǔ  
dōng  
dǒng  
dòng  
dōngběi

to order  
palace, hall  
telegram  
Telegraph Building (Peking)  
telephone; phone call

phone directory  
telephone number  
a buzzer, an electric  
bell

electric fan  
television  
elevator  
pastries, snacks  
movie  
movie theater  
younger brother  
the next day  
a place  
in the fields  
to reserve, to order

to have successfully  
reserved  
the Ting Tomb  
to reserve a table for a  
dinner party

area  
dacron  
rug  
map  
to lose  
underground  
underground train, subway  
pedestrian underground walkway  
terrain, topography  
the first time  
The First Company  
address  
landlord  
east  
to understand  
to move  
northeast



Dōngběi	Manchuria
dōngbian(r)	east side
Dōngdān	(the name of a neighborhood in Peking)
Dōngfēng Rénmín Gōngshè	East Wind People's Commune
Dōngfēng Shìchǎng	The Dongfeng Market
Dōnggua Zhōng	Winter Melon Soup served in the carved melon shell
Dōngmén Cāntīng	East Gate Restaurant
dōngnán	southeast
dōngtian	winter
dōngxi	things
dōngwuyuán	zoo
dōu	all, both
dōufu	soy bean curd
dōufu lǚ	fermented bean curd sauce
dòujiāng	soy bean milk, soy milk
dòuzi	beans
-duǎn	block, section
duǎn	to be short
duì	to be correct
duì	for, with respect to, from the point of view of
duì	team, as in production team
duìbuqǐ	I'm sorry, excuse me
duì le	yes, that's right
duìmiàn(r)	across from, facing
duì...shóuxi	to be familiar with
dùjià	to take leave
-dùn	(counter for a meal)
dūn	ton
-duō	over, more than
duō	to be more, to be many, to be much
duōbàn(r)	most of, the greater part of
duó dà	how old
duóde duō	much, more
duó jiǔ	how long
duóme	how...!, so...!
duóshao	how much, how many
duóshao hào	what size (shoe)
duó yuǎn	how far
dùzi	stomach

è	to be hungry
Èméi Cāntīng	the Omei Restaurant (a restaurant in Taipei)
Eng	Umm, Mmm (actually pronounced Ng or Mm)
èr	two
érgiě	and, moreover
Èryue	February
érzi	son
fā chē	to depart (from the first terminal of the train route)
fādá	to be developed
fādòng	to start
fāgei	to give out, to distribute to issue
fāhuī	to cause to develop, to stimulate the development of a skill or quality
fákuǎn	to fine, to issue a fine
fákuǎndān	ticket, a fine
fàn	(cooked) rice
fāncheng	to translate into
fàn cuòwu	to commit an offense
fàndiàn	hotel
-fang	place, region, area
fāngbèi	to be on guard (against), to take precaution against
fāngbian	to be convenient
fàng jià	to take time off for a holiday
fāngjiān	room
fāngmiàn (fāngmian)	aspect, side
fāngqián	room rental fee
fànguǎnzi	restaurant (Taipei)
fànguǎr	restaurant (Peking)
fǎngwèn	to visit, to pay a formal visit to a person
fāngxīn	to put one's mind at ease, to be unworried
fāngzài	to put (someplace, i.e., at,

fǎngzhīchǎng  
fǎngzū  
fǎngzi  
fàn hòu  
fànqián  
fānqié  
fāntīng  
fānwǎn  
fānyì  
fāshēng  
fā shāo  
Fǎwén (Fàwén)  
fāxiàn  
fāyīn  
fāzhǎn

fēi  
fèi  
fēicháng  
fēijī

fēijīchǎng  
féizào (yíkuài)  
-fēn  
-fēn  
-fēn(r)

fēn  
fēndào  
-fēng  
fēng  
fēngēi  
fēn hóng  
fēngjǐng  
fēngshàn  
Fēngzéyuán

fēnjī  
fēnsī  
Fóxiàng  
fǔbài  
Fùguì Jī  
fùjìn (fǔjìn)

in, on)  
textile factory  
rent (for a house)  
house  
after meals  
before meals  
tomato  
dining room  
rice bowl  
interpreter; to translate  
to happen, to occur  
to have a fever  
French language  
to discover  
pronunciation  
to develop, to grow, to  
expand; development  
to fly  
fee  
especially, extremely  
airplane

airport  
soap  
cent  
a minute  
copy (counter for magazine or  
newspaper)  
to divide  
to divide  
(counter for a letter)  
wind  
to give a share to  
to distribute profits  
scenery  
fan  
(the name of a restaurant  
in Peking)  
telephone extension  
cellophane noodles  
Buddhist statues  
to be corrupt  
Beggar's Chicken  
area, neighborhood,

fúli  
fùmǔ  
fùnǚ  
fùqīn  
fùrén  
fúwùshēng  
fúwùtái  
fùyè

vicinity  
benefits  
parents  
women  
father  
Mrs., Madame (Peking)  
attendant  
service desk  
side-line occupation

gāi

should, ought to, it's about  
time to...

gǎi  
gǎidào  
gǎigé  
gǎiliáng  
gǎiwéi

to change  
to change to  
to reform; reform  
to improve  
to convert into,

gànbù  
gànbufú  
gǎnbu huí lai  
gǎnbushàng  
gāng

to turn into, to change into  
cadre  
cadre suit  
can't rush back in time  
can't catch up to  
just (immediately preceding  
in time)

gāngcái  
gànjìn

just now, a short time ago  
vigor, energy, enthusiasm for  
work

gānjìng (gānjīng)  
Gānshāo Míngxiā

to be clean, to be neat  
Dry-Cooked Jumbo Shrimp  
Szechuan Style

gānxǐ  
gān yìbēi

to dry-clean  
to drink a glass (literally  
'to dry a glass')

gāo  
gǎo  
gāojí  
gāoliang jiǔ  
gāolú  
gàosong (gàosu)  
gàosu (gàosong)  
gǎo wèishēng  
gāoxìng  
-ge

to be tall  
to do, to be involved in  
high grade, advanced stage  
kaoliang, a strong liquor  
blast furnace  
to tell, to inform  
to tell, to inform  
to clean  
to be happy  
(general counter)

gé	to separate, to divide off
gé	dose, dosage
gè-	each, every, the various...
gèdì	everyplace
gēge	older brother
gègè	each and every
gěi	to give
gěi	for
gěi nín yùbei	to prepare for you
gěi wǒ lái	bring me (something)
gèjí	every level
Gēlúnbù	Columbus
gémìng	revolution
Gémìng Wēiyuánhùi	Revolutionary Committee
gēn	and
gēn	with
gèng	even more
gèzì	each one individually
Gōngānjú	Bureau of Public Security
Gōngbǎo Jīdīng	Kungpao Diced Chicken
gōngchǎng	factory
Gòngchǎndǎng	Communist Party
gōngdiàn	palace
gōngfei	free service (government sponsored)
gōngfèi yīliáo	free medical treatment (government sponsored)
gōngfu	free time, a period of time in which a person is free in the sense that his work is interruptable
gōnggòng qìchē	public bus
gōngguǎn	residence, home (a polite reference to another's residence)
gōngjù	tools
gōngjīn	kilogram (approximately 2.2 pounds)
gōnglǐ	kilometer
gōnglǐ yòuéryuán	public kindergarten
Gōnglùjú	Bureau of Public Roads
gōnglùjúde chē	bus between cities
gōngmù	are (100 square meters)
gōngnóngbīng	workers, farmers, soldiers
gōngqǐng	hectare (approximately

gōngren  
gōngshè  
gōngshēng  
gōngsī  
gōngxǐ  
gōngxiāo hézuòshè (Peking)

gōngyè  
gōngyèjuàn (gōngyèquān)  
'Gōngyè Xué Dàqīng'

gōngyòng  
gōngyù  
gōngyuán  
gōngyuán (hòu)  
gōngyuán qián  
gōngzī  
gōngzuò  
gōngzuòfú  
gōngzuòmào  
gōngzuò rényuán  
gōngzuòzhě  
gōngzuò shùnlì  
gù  
guàhào  
guàhàoxìn (yìfēng)  
guā húzi  
guǎi  
guān  
guān  
-guān

Guāngmíng Rìbào

guān mén  
guàshang  
guānyu  
gǔchéng  
gǔdài

gǔdū  
Gùgōng

Gùgōng Bówuyuán

guì  
guīju  
Guilín

2 1/2 acres)

worker  
commune  
liter  
company  
congratulations  
marketing and supply  
cooperative  
industry  
industrial goods coupon  
'In Industry Learn from  
Taching'  
public, for public use  
apartment  
park  
A.D.  
B.C.  
wages  
to work  
uniform, work clothes  
work hats, helmets  
staff, personnel  
worker  
the work goes well  
to hire  
to register (something)  
registered letter  
to shave (the beard)  
to turn  
to close  
pass (through a mountain)  
government official, military  
official

The Kuangming Daily

to close for the day  
to hang up (telephone)  
as for, about, regarding  
ancient city  
ancient times

ancient capital  
Imperial Palace (short for  
Gùgōng Bówuyuán)  
the Former Imperial Palace  
Museum  
to be expensive  
regulation  
Kueilin, a scenic city in

guīmo	southern China
guìxìng	scope, scale
guìzhàng	honorable surname
gòu	to be valuable
gūji	to be enough
gǔjì	to estimate
	historical remains, ancient ruins
-guo	(experience marker)
-guó	country
guō	cooking pot, wok
guò	to cross, to pass
guò	to pass (some time)
guò	past the hour
Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	The Ambassador Hotel (Taipei)
guójiā	country
guò jíitǐ shēnghuò	'to live a communal life'
guónèi	within the country, domestic
guòqù	formerly
guōtiē	steam-fried dumplings
guówài	outside the country, foreign
Guówùyuàn (Měiguó)	U.S. Department of State
guóyíng nóngchǎng	state farm
gùshi	story
gùyì	intentionally, on purpose
hái	still
hái	fairly, pretty, rather
hái	in addition
hái bù yídìng	not yet certain
hái hǎo	fairly well
hǎijūn	navy
hàipà	to be afraid
háishi	or
háishi	still
hǎishuǐ	sea water
hǎiyùn	sea mail
háizi	child, children
Hàncháo	Han Dynasty (206-225 B.C.)
hángkōng xìn	air mail letter

hángkōng yóujiǎn	aerogram
Hàn-Rì zìdiǎn	Chinese-Japanese dictionary
Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	Chinese-English dictionary
hànzāi	drought
-hào	number (used in address)
-hào	used to indicate days of the month (i.e., <u>sìhào</u> , 'the fourth')
hǎo	to be good, well
hǎo	to be better
hǎo	very
hǎochī	to be tasty, good to eat
hǎodeduo	much better
hǎojíle	wonderful
hǎo jiǔ	a long time
hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn	I haven't seen you for a long time
-hǎo le	satisfactorily completed
hǎokàn	to be good looking
hàomǎ(r)	number
hǎowán	to be enjoyable
hǎoxiàng	to seem (to be), to appear that, to resemble, as if
hǎoxiē	a good many, a lot
hàozhào (hàozhāo)	to summon, to call to duty, to issue a call
hē	to drink
hé	and
hé	river
hébì	Why is it necessary?
hébìngcheng	to merge into
hē chá	to drink tea
hēi	to be black
hēibǎn	blackboard
hěn	very
héshì	to be suitable, to be appropriate, to suit, to fit
hézuòhuà	to put into cooperatives
hézuòshè	a cooperative
hóng	to be red
Hóngbīnlóu	name of a restaurant in Peking
hóng chá	black tea
Hóngqí	'Red Flag', name of a commune
Hóngqí Rénmín Gōngshè	Red Flag People's Commune
Hóngshāoyú	Red-Cooked Fish
Hóngshāo Yúchǐ	Red-Cooked Shark's Fin



hóngyàoshuǐ	mercurochrome
hòu	back
hòubian(r)	back side
hòulái	later, afterwards, later on
hóulong	throat
hòutian	the day after tomorrow
hòunian	the year after next
hú	lake
-huà	-ize, as in modernize
huà	to paint
huà	words, speech
huà(r) (yìzhāng)	a painting
huá chuán	to row a boat
huàféi	chemical fertilizer
huàféichǎng	chemical fertilizer factory
huáiyùn	to be pregnant
huājuǎn(r)	flower-rolls
huā kāile	the flowers have bloomed
Huáilǐ	Chinese mile (1/3 of English mile)
Huáměi Kāfēitīng	Huamei Coffeehouse (Taipei)
huàn	to change, exchange, change buses
huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
huángdì	emperor
huánggōng	emperor's residence, imperial palace
huánghuāyú	yellow fish
huáng jiǔ	a mild rice wine
huànhuan	to change
huānyíng	to welcome
huāpíng	vase
huàxué	chemistry
huàzhuāngpǐn	cosmetics
Hù Cài	Shanghai School of Chinese Cooking
huí	the opposite direction
huí	to return to
huì	to know how to, can
huì	willing to, going to
huíbulái	not able to get back
huídá	to answer
huídelái	able to get back
huí diànhuà	to return a phone call
huí guó	to return to one's native country
huí jiā	to return home

huì kè  
huìkèshì, (huìkèshǐ)  
huílai

to receive guests  
reception room  
to come back

Huímín  
huíqu  
huìyitīng  
hūnfāng  
huōchē  
huōchēzhàn  
huōchē zhìzàochǎng  
huōtuǐ  
huòshi  
huòzhě  
hútong (hútòng)  
hùshi  
hùzhào  
hùzhùzǔ  
húzi

Moslem  
to go back  
meeting hall  
synthetic blend  
train  
train station  
truck manufacturing plant  
ham  
or  
or  
a narrow street (Peking)  
nurse  
passport  
mutual aid team or group  
beard, mustache

-jí  
jī  
jí  
jǐ-  
ji-  
jì  
-jiā

level of organization  
chicken  
to be anxious  
how many  
a few  
to mail, to send by mail  
-ist, professional,  
specialist

jiā  
jiā  
jiā bān

home  
to add, plus  
to add extra work, to work  
overtime

jiābìdīng  
jiāli  
jiāli  
-jiàn  
-jiàn

gabardine  
family  
household  
(counter for clothing)  
(counter for matters,  
affairs)

-jiàn

piece (counter for  
suitcases, pieces of  
clothing, 'pieces' of  
business)

jiān

(counter for rooms)

jiǎn	to select, to pick out
jiàn	to meet, to see
jiàn	to build, to construct
Jiānādà	Canada
jiǎnchá	to examine, to inspect, to check
jiǎndān	to be simple
jiǎndānde	something simple
jiàn dū	to set up a capital
jiǎng	to discuss (something), to talk about (something)
jiàng	paste, bean paste
jiǎngdao	to talk about
jiānglái	in the future
jiànli	to set up, to establish
jiàngyóu	soy sauce
jiànkāng	to be healthy
jiànmiàn	to meet someone
jiànshèchéng	to build into
jiànyì	proposal, suggestion
jiànzhù	to build, to construct; structure, building
jiànzhùde	constructed
-jiǎo	dumpling
jiāo	to hand over, to submit
jiāo	to teach
jiào	to call; to be called, to be named
jiào	to order (food, etc.)
jiào	to have someone do something, to tell someone to do something
jiāogěi	to give to
jiāo huār	to water flowers
jiāoqū	suburbs
jiàoshòu	professor
jiāo shū	to teach
jiāotōng	transportation, traffic
jiàoyu	to educate
Jiàoyubù	Ministry of Education
jiàoyuán	teacher
jiǎozi	boiled dumpling, dumplings
jiànshǐzhízhào	driver's license
jiāshǔ	family members
jiāting	family, home, household
Jiāyù Guān	the Chiayü Pass, name of

jiāzhǎng	region in Kansu Province
jiāzhi	parent
Jiāzhōu	value, worth
jībenshang	California
	fundamentally, mainly,
	basically, practically,
	almost
jìchéngchē	taxi (Taipei)
jīchuáng	machine tool
jīdàn	(chicken) egg
jìde	to remember
jǐdiǎn zhōng	what time
jīdīng	diced chicken
-jié	session, time (counter for classes)
jiē	to connect, to join
jiē	street
jiē	to meet
jiē	to receive (mail, messages, guests, phone calls)
jiēdàishì	waiting room (for VIPS)
jiēdao	to receive (alternate for jiēzhào, common in Taipei)
Jiěfàngjūn	Liberation Army
jiéguǒ	result
jiēguoqu	to connect, to put through (phone call)
jiéhūn	to get married, to marry
jiějie	older sister
jiěmèi	sisters
jièshao	to introduce
jiēzhào	to receive
jige	several
jǐge	how many
jǐge xīngqī	how many weeks
jǐge yuè	how many months
jǐhào	what day of the month
jìhua	to plan to
jīhui	opportunity, chance
jījìxìng	enthusiasm, initiative
-jíle	extremely
jǐlóu	what floor
jǐlù chē	what number bus
-jīn	catty (1.1 pounds)
jǐn	only, just
jìn	to enter
jìn	to be close, near

jìnbù	to progress
jìng	to offer someone something
Jīng Cǎi	Northern school of Chinese cooking
jǐngchá	police, policeman
jǐngchájú	police station
jīngguo	by way of, via, to pass through, to go through
Jīngjībù	Ministry of Economics
jīngjiguān	economics officer
jīngjixué	economics
jīngjixuéjiā	economist
jīnglǐ	manager
jìnkǒu	to import
jǐnián	how many years
jìnlǐàng	with all one's strength
jīnnián	this year
jīntian	today
jìnyībù	to make some progress, to go one step further
jìnxíng	to carry out, to do
jīpiàn	chicken slices
jīqì	engine (literally, machine)
jìshu	skill, technique
jìshù gōngren	mechanic, technician
jìshu rényuán	technicians
jìsù yòuéryuán	boarding kindergarten
jìsuan	to calculate, to figure
jìsuì	how old
jǐtiān	how many days
jiǔ	to be long (period of time)
jiǔ	liquor, wine
jiǔ	nine
jiǔ	only
jiù	to be old
jiù	right, immediately, exactly (with reference to time or space)
jiù	then
jiùhùchē	ambulance
jiù shi	(used for emphasis), this is
jiǔ yǎng	glad to meet you
Jiǔyuè	September
jiǔxí	banquet
jìxù	to continue

jīyóu  
jǐyuè  
jǐwèi  
jù  
juǎn  
juǎnqilai  
juède

juédìng  
jūnguān  
jūnrén  
jūnshì  
jūnshì yǎnxí  
jùyìjū  
júzi  
júzi shuǐ

kāfēi  
kāfēitīng  
kāi  
kāi  
kāi  
kāi chē  
kāi dǎo  
kāidechulai  
kāideshangqu  
kāi huì  
kāi mēn  
kāishǐ  
kāishuǐ  
kāi xué  
kǎn  
kǎn  
kǎn  
kǎnbujian  
kǎndedong

kāndejian  
kǎnjian  
kǎnkan

kǎnqilai

kǎo

machine oil  
what month  
how many persons (polite)  
to assemble  
reel (of tape)  
to roll up  
to feel that

to decide  
military officer  
military person  
military  
military maneuvers  
to get together  
oranges, tangerines  
orangeade, orange juice

coffee  
coffee house  
to open  
to drive (something)  
to leave, to start  
to drive  
to operate on, an operation  
to be able to drive out  
to be able to drive up  
to attend a meeting  
to open for business  
to start, begin  
boiled water (for drinking)  
to begin school  
to read, to look at, to visit  
to think (express an opinion)  
it depends on...  
not able to see  
to be able to understand  
by reading  
to be able to see  
to see  
to look at; to sightsee, to  
visit  
when looking at..., in  
appearance  
roasted, toasted; to roast

kǎogǔ	to do archaeological work
kǎogǔ gōngzuòzhě	archaeological worker
kǎogǔ xuéjiā	archaeologist
'kào tiān chī fàn'	'dependent on Heaven for food'
Kǎo Yā	Peking Roast Duck
Kǎo Yáng ròu	Mongolian Barbecued Lamb
kě	indeed (intensifier)
-kè	quarter of an hour
kè	class
kè	to engrave, to carve
kèfàn	'fixed meal', a type of meal in which soup, a main dish, rice and tea are all served for one price
kěndìng	positive, affirmative
kěnéng	maybe
kèqǐ	to be polite
kèren	customer
kěshi	but
késou	to cough
kètīng	living room
kěxǐ	unfortunately, what a pity
kēxué	science
kéyǐ	may, can, to be permitted
kēzhǎng	section chief
kōng	to be vacant, to be empty
kōngjūn	air force
kǒngpà	to be afraid that (something is or is not the case); probably
kōngqì	air
kōngqì wūrǎn	air pollution
kǒudài	pocket
kū	to cry
kǔ	to be bitter, to be painful
-kuài	a piece (counter)
-kuài	dollar
kuài	to be fast
kuài	soon
kuàizi	chopsticks
kuān	to be wide, to be broad
kuāng	a mine
kuàngqu	mining district

kùnnan  
kuòdà  
kūqilai  
kùzhuāng  
kùzi

to be difficult, difficulty  
to expand  
to start crying  
pantsuit  
pants

là  
lái  
láibuji  
láideji  
lái(ge) diànhuà  
láilai wángwang  
lán  
lánwěiyán  
láo  
lǎo  
láodòng  
láodòng bǎohǔ  
láodòng mófàn  
láodòngzhě  
lǎojiā  
lǎojià  
lǎorenjia

to be peppery-hot  
to come  
can't make it in time  
can make it in time  
to make a phone call here  
comings and goings  
to be blue  
appendicitis  
to labor  
to be old  
to do manual labor  
worker's insurance  
labor hero, model worker  
worker, laborer  
'original home'  
excuse me  
a form of address for an  
older person  
always, all the time  
teacher  
(combined le, new situation  
and completed action marker)  
(new situation marker)  
(completed action marker)  
to be tired  
to be cold

lǎoshi  
lǎoshī  
le

le  
-le  
lèi  
lěng

lěngfēng  
lěngpán  
-li  
lí  
lǐ  
lián  
liǎn  
liáncheng  
lián...dōu/yě...  
-liàng

air conditioning  
cold dish  
in (locational ending)  
apart from  
inside, in  
to connect  
face  
to connect into  
even  
(counter for vehicles)



liáng	to be cool
liǎng-	two
liàng	to light up
liǎngběn	two volumes, a few volumes
liángkuai	to be cool
liángshi	grain
liáng tiwēn	to take a temperature
liánjiēqilai	to connect up, to connect together
liánxi	to contact someone (about a matter)
liǎojiě (liǎojie)	to understand, to comprehend
liàozi	material, fabric
lǐbài	week
lǐbàijī	what day of the week
Lǐbàirì	Sunday
Lǐbàitiān	Sunday
Lǐbàiyī (-èr...)	Monday (Tuesday...)
lǐbian(r)	inside
Lǐbīnsī	Protocol Department (Peking)
lǐfǎ (lǐfà)	to cut hair
lǐfǎde dìfang	a place to get a haircut
lǐhai	to be severe
lǐkǎi	to leave
lìliang	strength
líng	to be sharp, to be keen
líng	zero
líng	grave or tomb (of emperor or leader)
lǐng	to collect (something that is issued)
lǐngdǎo	to lead, leader
Língdì Líng	the tomb of Emperor Ling of the Han Dynasty (168-189 A.D.)
língjiàn	parts
língmù	tomb or mausoleum of a distinguished person
língshiguǎn	consulate
língwài	in addition to, additionally
línshí	temporary
lìshǐ	history
liú	to leave someone or something, to keep someone or something, to

liù	stay, to remain
liú ge huà(r)	six
liúxialai	to leave a message
	to leave behind, to leave over
liú xuě (xiě)	to bleed
liúxuëshēng	a student studying abroad
Liúyue	June
-lǒng (-nòng)	alley
-lóu	floor, storey (of building)
lóucéng fúwùtái	the service desk for the floor
	upstairs
lóushàng	stairs, stairwell
lóutī	downstairs
lóuxià	road
lù	to be green
lǚ	north side of the street
lǚběi	green tea
lǚ chá	east side of the street
lǚdōng	inn, hotel
lǚguǎn	to make green, to landscape
lǚhuà	army
lǚjūn	intersection
lǚkǒu(r)	south side of the street
lǚnán	tire
lǚntāi	Loyang
Luòyáng	west side of the street
lǚxī	
lǚxing	to travel; trip
lǚxing zhīpiào (yìzhāng)	traveler's checks
lǚyīndài	recording tape
lǚyīnjī	tape recorder
ma	(question marker)
mǎ	yard (a unit of measurement)
máfan ni	sorry to bother you
mǎi	to buy
mài	to sell
mǎi cài	to buy groceries
mǎimai	business
màiwán le	to be sold out
màizi	wheat
Mǎ-Liè zhǔyì	Marxist-Leninist principles,

Mǎkèsì-Lièníng zhǔyì

mǎlù

mǎn

mǎn

mǎng

mǎngchángyán

MǎnQīng

mántou

Mápó Dòufu

-máo

mǎobing

mǎoyī

Máo Zhǔxí

màozi

mǎshàng

mázui

méi

měi

měi

méi bànfa

měicì

Měidàsī

měide xiàng huà

yíyàng

méi ér méi nǚ

měigé

méi guānxi

Měiguó Guówùyuán

Měiguó Xīnwénchù

méi jiéhūn

Měijīn

mèimei

méi shenme

méi shì (le)

měitian

méi wèntí

méi(you)

méi you...nàme/zhènme

méi(you) yìsi

Měizhōu dàlù

Marxism-Leninism

Marxist-Leninist principles,

Marxism-Leninism

avenue

to be full

to be slow

to be busy

appendicitis

the Manchu Ch'ing government

steamed bread

Ma Po's Bean Curd

dime

trouble, flaw, defect

sweater

Chairman Mao

hat

immediately, right away

anesthesia

not, not to have

each, every

to be beautiful

I have no way, it can't

be helped

each time

Bureau of American and Pacific

Affairs

as beautiful as a painting

without sons or daughters

every (certain amount of

time)

it doesn't matter

U.S. Department of State

United States International

Communications Agency (USICA,

formerly United States

Information Agency (USIA)

not to be married

U.S. currency

younger sister

it's nothing

everything is all right

everyday

there's no problem

not to have, there isn't

there aren't

is not as...as...

to be uninteresting

American continent

mén(r)	door
mén(r)	gate
ménkǒu(r)	doorway, gateway
mǐ	meter
miàn	noodles
miànbāo	bread
miànji	surface, surface area
mǐfàn	cooked rice
Mǐn Cài	Fukien school of Chinese cooking
míngbai	to be clear, to be intelligible
Míngcháo	Ming Dynasty
Mínglíng	the Ming Tombs
míngnián	next year
míngtian	tomorrow
míngxiā	prawn, (large) shrimp
míngxìnpiàn	post cards
míngzi	name
míngzi	first name
mínzú	race, ethnic group
mìshū	secretary, executive assistant
Mìzhī Huōtuǐ	Ham in Honey Sauce
mònián	the last years of...
mòshǒu	to confiscate
mótuōchē	motorcycle
mǔ	a Chinese mou, roughly equal to 1/6 of an acre
mù	grave, tomb
mùdi	reason, objective, purpose
mùqián	at present, currently
mǔqīn	mother
Mùxū Ròu	Moshi Pork (pork fried with eggs)
ná	to take
nǎ-	which
nà-	that
nà	well then
nàbian	that side

nábushanglai	can't carry up
nábuxialai	can't get (it) down
náchulai	to take out
náchuqu	to take out
nǎge	which
nàge	that
nǎiniú	dairy cow
ná...lái	to bring
náli	Not at all!
náli	where
nàli	there
nàme	so, to that extent, to that degree, in that case
nán	to be difficult
nán	south
nánbian(r)	south side
nánbù	the southern part (i.e., of the island)
nánfāng cài	southern style food
nánháizi	boy
Nánjīng Dōnglù	Nanking East Road (Taipei)
Nánjīng Xīlù	Nanking West Road (Taipei)
nánnǚ píngděng	equality of the sexes
nǎr	where
nàr	there
náshanglai	to bring up
náshangqu	to take up
náxialai	to bring down
náxiaqu	to take down
ne	(question marker)
ne	(marker of ongoing action)
něi-	which
nèi-	that
něibian(r)	which side
nèibian(r)	that side
něige	which
nèige	that
něiguó	which country
nèikē	internal medicine, general medicine
nèikē yīsheng	internist
nèikù	undershorts
něinian	which year
něitian	which day

nèitīan  
nèixie  
nèiyī  
néng  
nǐ  
-nián  
nián

nián \_\_\_\_\_  
niánchǎnliàng  
niánji  
niánnian  
niánqīng  
nián shū  
nǐmen  
nín  
niúǎi  
niúròu  
niúròu miàn  
nízi  
-nòng (-long)  
nóngchǎng  
nóngcūn  
nóngmǎgdeshíhou

nóngmín  
nóngyào  
nóngyàochǎng  
nóngyè  
nóngyè gōngren  
Nóngyè Hézuòhuà  
Yùndòng  
nuǎnhuo  
nuǎnqì  
nǚér  
nǚgōng  
nǚháizi  
nǚlì  
nǚshì

pà  
pài  
páidǎng

the other day  
those  
undershirt  
can, to be able to  
you  
year  
to be pronounced as,  
to read as  
to study \_\_\_\_\_  
yearly production  
age, years old  
every year  
to be young  
to study  
you (plural)  
you (polite)  
milk  
beef  
soup noodles with beef  
woolen clothes  
alley  
a farm  
farm village  
during the busy season  
for farming  
peasant, farmer  
pesticide  
pesticide factory  
agriculture  
agricultural worker  
Agricultural Cooperativiza-  
tion Movement  
to be warm  
central heating  
daughter  
female worker  
girl  
to be industrious, work hard  
Ms., Miss

to be afraid  
to send to assign  
(a person to do something)  
transmission (gear)

pàidao	to send to
páigǔ miàn	soup noodles with a pork chop
páijià	exchange rate (currency)
pàilái	to send here
páiqìguǎn	exhaust pipe
páizhào	license plates
páizi	a sign
pángbian(r)	beside, next to, along side of
pánzi	plate
pánziwǎn	dishes
péi	to accompany
pèi	to fill a prescription
pèi	to find something to match, to match things
pèi cài	to select dishes for a formal meal
pèngpò	to be cut after being hit by something
pèngshāng	to be injured by being hit with something
péngyou	friend
pèngzhào	to hit
pēn qī	to spray paint
-piān	(counter for written articles)
piàn	tablet (of medicine)
piányi	to be inexpensive, to be cheap
piào (yìzhāng)	ticket, coupon
piàoliang	to be beautiful
piàozǐ (yìzhāng)	(dollar) bill
pínbāo	handbag
píndài	belt
píjiǔ	beer
-píng	bottle (counter)
píngcháng	usually
píngděng	equality
píngfāng	square (used in measurement)
píngfāng gōngchǐ	square meter
píngfāng gōnglǐ	square kilometer, one hundred hectares
píngfāng mǐ	square meter
píngguo (píngguǒ)	apple
píngjūn	average, on the average

píngxìn  
píngyuán  
píxié (yìshuāng)  
pō  
pǔjí  
pǔtōng  
pùzi

regular mail, surface mail  
a plain  
shoes  
to be worn out, to break  
to popularize  
regular  
shop, store (Peking)

qī  
qī  
qì  
-qiān  
qián  
qián  
qiánbian(r)  
qiánnian  
qiántian  
qiǎo  
qìchē  
qìchēzhàn  
qìdiǎnzhàn

seven  
paint, lacquer  
air  
thousand  
money  
front, ahead  
front side, the place ahead  
the year before last  
the day before yesterday  
to be timely, to be opportune  
car  
bus stop  
the station where a train  
originates

qiézi  
qǐfēi  
qìhou  
-qilai  
-qilai

eggplant  
to take off (airplane)  
climate  
to rise upward  
to start (doing); when  
(doing)

Qíncháo  
qīng  
qíng  
qǐng

Ch'in Dynasty (255-209 B.C.)  
to be light, not heavy  
to be clear, to clear up  
to request; please; to treat

Qíngbàosi  
Qíngcháo  
qíngchu

Intelligence Bureau (Peking)  
Ch'ing Dynasty (1644-1911)  
to be clear, to be  
intelligible

qīngdòu

green peas; green young  
soybeans

Qīngdòu Xiārén  
qīngfàng

Shrimp with Green Peas  
handle with care (literally)



qīng gōngzuò	'put down lightly')
qīng jià	light work
	to request leave, to take vacation
qīngjiāo	green pepper
qīngjiào	to ask advice, to request teaching
qīngkuàng	situation, conditions
qīngtiě (qīngtiē)	written invitation
qīngwèn	May I ask...
Qīng zài lái...	Please bring another...
qīng zuò	please sit down
qīnlüè	to invade; invasion
qīnqi	relatives
qīnshì (qīnshǐ)	bedroom
qīnshǒu	one's own hand
qīnyǎn	with one's own eyes
qīnzì	personally, privately, by oneself, in person
qípáo	traditional Chinese dress
qìshuǐ	soda, carbonated soft drink
qítā	the others, the remainder
qiūtiān	fall, autumn
qìyóu	gasoline
Qīyue (Qīyue)	July
qǔ	to pick up, to get
qù	to go
quán	to be whole, to be complete
quántuō	full-care, boarding (kindergarten)
qūbié	difference
qūchulai	to claim (luggage), to pick (something) up, to get (something)
quēfá	to lack
qùnián	last year
qúnzi	skirt
ràng	to allow, to let, to have someone do something
ránhòu	afterwards, after that
rè	to be hot

rén	person
rènao	to be lively, to be bustling, to be noisy
rènde	to recognize, to know
rénkǒu	population
rénmín	people, citizens of a country
Rénmínbì	People's currency (Peking)
Rénmín Dàhuìtáng	the National People's Congress Building
rénmín gōngshè	people's commune
<u>Rénmín Huàbào</u>	<u>The People's Pictorial</u>
Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn	People's Liberation Army
<u>Rénmín Rìbào</u>	<u>The People's Daily</u>
rènshi	to recognize, to know
rènshi zì	to know how to read (literally, to recognize characters)
rényuán	personnel
rénzàosī	rayon
Rìběn	Japan
Rì-Hàn zìdiǎn	Japanese-Chinese dictionary
rìtuō	day-care kindergarten
Rìwen	Japanese language
róngyi	to be easy
ròu	meat
ròusī chǎo miàn	fried noodles with shreds of pork
ròusī miàn	soup-noodles with shreds of pork
rúguo	if
ruò	to be weak
sān	three
sānbān	three shifts
sānbān dǎode gōngchǎng	a factory with three changing shifts
sàn bù	to take a walk
Sānlǐtún	(name of a neighborhood in Peking where some diplomatic personnel live)
Sānxiān Chǎo Miàn	noodles fried with three fresh things (literally,

Sānyue	'three fresh fry noodles')
sēnlín	March
shābù	forest
shāchē	gauze
shān	brakes
shāndòng	mountain
Shāndōng	mountain caves
-shang	Shantong (province)
-shang	on (locational ending)
shàng	onto (directional ending)
shàng	to go up
shàng bān	to get on
shàngbian(r)	to start work
shàng chē	the upper surface, above
shàngdiàn	to get on the bus/train/car
shàng fēng	shop, store
shàngge	to catch cold
	last (i.e., shàngge yuè,
	'last month')
shàngge xīngqī	last week
shàngge yuè	last month
Shànghǎi	Shanghai
shàng kè	to begin class
shàng lóu (qu)	to go upstairs
shāngren	business person
shāngǔ	valley
shāngǔli	in a valley
shāngwù	commercial business
shāngwu	forenoon, morning
shàngxiào	colonel (military title)
shàng xué	to go to school
Shānhǎi Guān	the Shanhai Pass, name of
	a region in Hopeh province
shānshuǐ huà (yìzhāng)	landscape painting
Shānxī Shěng Bówugǎn	Shensi Provincial Museum
shāo	to boil, to heat
shǎo	seldom; little, less
shǎo	to be few
shǎo	little, less, too little,
	too few
shāobing	sesame rolls
sháor (sháozi)	spoon
shàoxiào	major (military title)
shè	short for <u>gōngshè</u> , commune
shèhuì	society
shèhuìxué	sociology
shèjì	to design, to plan

shēnbàodān	declaration (customs)
shēng	sound, voice
shēng	to be born, to give birth
shěng	to save, to economize on
shěng	province
shēng bìng	to get sick
shēngchǎn	production
shěngde	lest, to avoid
shēnghuó	life
shēngqi	to be mad, angry
shēngrì	birthday
shěng shíjian	to save time
shēngyin	voice
shénme	what
shenme	anything
...shenmede	...and so on (after a series of items)
shénme dìfang	where, what place
shénme shíhou	when, what time
shēntǐ jiànkāng	good health
Shěnyáng	the name of a city in Manchuria, formerly called Mukden
shèyuán	commune personnel
shí	ten
shì	to be
shì	yes, that's so
shì	to try out (something)
shì (yíjiàn)	matter, affair, business thing
shìbīng	enlisted man
shìde	yes, that's so
shì...-de	(focus construction)
Shìèryue	December
shìguān	sergeant
shìhé	to suit, to fit
shíhou	time
shìjiè	world
shìjièshang yǒu míngde gǔjì zhī yī	one of the famous ancient remains of the world
shìjièshang zuì wěidàde jiànzhù zhī yī	one of the greatest structures in the world
Shìjiè Yínháng	World Bank
shíqī	time, period

shuǐguǒ	fruit
shuǐ jiǎo	boiled dumpling
shuì jiào	to sleep
shuǐkù	reservoir
shuǐpíng	level, standard
shuì wǔjiào	to take a nap
shuǐxǐ	to wash, to launder
shuǐyī	pajamas
shuǐzāi	flood
shǔjià	summer vacation
shūjiàzi	bookcase
shùnlì	to go well, without difficulty
shuō	to speak; to speak a language; to say that
shuōcuò	to speak incorrectly
shuōhǎo le	to have come to an agreement (about something), (some- thing) has been agreed on
shuōhuà	to speak
shuōmíng	explanation
sì	four
'Sìge Xiàndàihuà'	'The Four Modernizations'
sījī	driver of a hired vehicle
Sìyue	April
sīzhǎng	department chief
sīzhōu	all sides, all around
sōng	to be loose
sòng	to send
sòngdào	to send to, to deliver to
sònggei	to give to
sòngshàngqu	to send up
sòngxíng	to see a person off
suān	to be sour
suàn	to calculate, to figure
suàn zhàng	to figure the check
suànzhàng	to settle an account
sù cài	vegetable (vegetarian) dishes
-suì	year of age
suíbiàn	to be informal or casual, as you like, as you wish, whatever suits you, 'according to your convenience'
suīrán...kěshi	although, even though...

suìshu	still
suíyì	age
Sūlián	according to one's wishes
Sūn Zhōngshān	the Soviet Union
suóyì	Sun Yatsen
	therefore
sùshe	dormitory
Sūzhōu	Soochow
tā	he, she, it
tài	too, excessive
Tàibi	Taiwan currency
Tàidà	Taiwan University (abbreviation)
táifēng	typhoon
tài hǎo le	wonderful
Tàihú	T'aihu, the name of a lake in Wúxī
tàitai	Mrs., wife
<u>Táiwān Wéntán</u>	<u>Taiwan Literary Magazine</u>
Tàiyuán	T'aiyuán, capital of Shansi province
tāmen	they
tán	to chat, to talk about
-táng	class, period
-táng	(counter for trips of a train, bus, classes etc.)
tāng	soup
táng	candy, sugar
Tángcháo	T'ang Dynasty (618-905 A.D.)
tángcù	sweet and sour
Tángcù Báicài	Sweet and Sour Cabbage
Tángcù Yú	Sweet and Sour Fish
tāng miàn	soup-noodles
tǎngxia	to lie down
tǎnzi	blanket
-tào	(counter for suits, sets of things)
tǎolùn (tǎolun)	to discuss
tèbié	especially
tèdiǎn	distinctive point
tèkuài	express train
téng (tòng)	to ache, to be painful
tí	to lift, to raise

tì	for, as a substitute for, in place of
-tiān	day
tiān	heaven, sky, day
tián	to be sweet
tián	to fill out
Tiānānmén	T'ien An Men, Gate of Heavenly Peace
tiāncài	dessert
Tiānjīn (Tiānjīng)	Tientsin
tiānqi	weather
tiānqiáo	pedestrian overpass
Tiānshòu Shān	the name of a mountain
tiāntiān	every day
'tiān xià wéi gōng'	'the world belongs to everyone'
-tiáo	(counter for long, winding things, narrow things, pants)
tiáogēng	spoon
tiàowǔ	to dance
tiáozhěng	to adjust
tíchulai	to bring up, to set forth
tiē	to paste on, to stick
tígāo	to raise
tīng	to listen to, to hear
tīng	to listen to, to follow
tíng	to stop, to park
tīngbudong	cannot understand
tīngdechulai	to be able to recognize what something is from the sound
tīng diànhuà	to answer the phone
tīngdǒng	to understand (by listening)
tīngshuō	to hear that
tǐwēn	body temperature
tǐxiàn	to embody, to realize, to show
tòng (téng)	to be painful, to ache
tóngshì	fellow worker, colleague
Tōngyòng Gōngsī	General Electric
tóngxué	classmate
tóngxuéhuì	alumni association

tóngyì	(literally, fellow-student group)
tōngzhī	to agree
tóngzhì	announcement, to announce
-tóu	comrade
tóu	one of two ends of something
tóu tég	head
tóuyícì	headache
tù	the first time
tuánzhǎng	to throw up, to vomit
tǔdì	head of the delegation
Tǔdì Gǎigé Yùndòng	land
tuī	Land Reform Movement
tuǐ	to push
tuǐfān	leg
tuō	to overthrow
tuōchē	to tow, to drag along
tuōérsuǒ	tow truck
tuōlājī	nursery school
túpiàn	tractor
tǔrǎng	illustration, picture
	soil
wài	hello (greeting on the phone)
wàibian(r)	outside
wàidì	outside this area, foreign places
wàiguó	outside one's own country, abroad, foreign country
wàiguó rén	foreigner (non-Chinese)
wàijiāo	diplomacy
Wàijiāobù	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
wàijiāoguan	diplomat
wàikē yīsheng	surgeon
Wàimàobù	Ministry of Foreign Trade
wàimian	outside
wàishì	foreign affairs
wàishì jǐngchá	foreign affairs police
wàitào	jacket (that extends below the waist)
wàizǔfù	maternal grandfather
wàizǔmǔ	maternal grandmother
-wán	to be finished



-wǎn	bowl (counter)
wǎn	to bend
wán(r)	to play, to relax, to have fun
wǎn	to be late
wàn	ten thousand
wāndòu	peas; snow pea pods
wāndòu jiá (wāndòu jiǎor)	snow pea pods
wǎnfàn	dinner, supper
wàng	to forget
wàng	to, towards
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē	Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard (Peking)
wàngji	to forget
Wǎnlǐ Chángchéng	The Great Wall of 10,000 Li
wǎnshang	evening
wàzi	socks
-wèi	(polite counter for people)
wéi	hello (greeting on the phone)
wèi	stomach
wèibìng	stomach sickness
wěidà	to be great
wèi(le)	in order to, for
wèinǎi	to nurse, to feed milk
wèishēngshì (wèishēngshǐ)	health room
wèishēngsuǒ	health clinic
wèishēngyuàn	hospital
wèishénme	why
wéixiǎn (wēixiǎn)	danger
wèizi	seat, place
wèn	to ask
wēndù	temperature
wénhuà	culture
wèntí	problem, question
wénwù	cultural relic
wénxué	literature
wénzhāng	essay, article
wǒ	I, me
wòfáng	bedroom
wǒmen	we, us
(wǒ) tóngyì	(I) agree

wǔ  
Wúchǎn Jiējí Wénhuà Dà  
Gémìng Yùndòng  
Wúhàn Dàxué  
Wúhàn Gāngtiě Chǎng  
wǔshuì  
Wúxī

Wǔyī Láodòngjié

Wǔyue

xī  
xǐ  
xià  
xià  
xià bān  
xiàbian(r)

xià chē

xiàcì  
xiàge

xiàge xīngqī  
xià kè  
xià yuè  
-xialai

xià lóu (lái)  
xiān  
xián  
xiàn  
xiàn  
xiāng  
xiǎng  
xiǎng

five  
Great Proletarian Cultural  
Revolution  
Wuhan University  
Wuhan Iron and Steel Works  
afternoon nap  
Wusih, the name of a city  
in Kansu  
May Day, Labor Day  
(literally, 'May the first,  
Labor Day')  
May

west  
to wash  
to go down; to get off  
the next (something)  
to get off work  
the bottom, the under  
surface  
to get off the bus,  
'Out please!'  
next time  
next (i.e., xiàge yuè,  
next month')  
next week  
to end class  
next month  
to come down and towards the  
speaker; shows that the  
action of the main verb has  
resulted in a final or  
fixed state  
to go or come downstairs  
first; ahead of time  
to be salty  
(telephone) line, wire  
county  
to be fragrant  
to think, to think that  
to want to, to feel like,

xiǎng	to be thinking of doing
xiàng	to miss, to think of
xiàng	lane
xiàng	toward
xiàng	to resemble, to be similar to, to be like
xiāngcài	Chinese parsley, fresh coriander
Xiāng Cài	Hunan school of Chinese cooking
xiāngdāngyú	to be equivalent to, to be equal to
xiānghǎo le	to have reached a conclusion (about some- thing), (something) has been thought out
xiǎng jiā	to be homesick
xiāngjiāo	banana
xiǎngqilai	to think of, to remember
Xiāngsù Yā	Fragrant Crispy Duck
xiāngxia	countryside
xiǎngyixiǎng	to think it over
xiāngyóu	sesame oil
xiāngzi	box, suitcase, trunk
xiānjìn	to advance
xiānsheng	Mr., sir
xiànzài	now
xiǎo	to be small
xiǎoběnzi	small notebook
xiǎobiàn	urine
xiǎochīdiàn	little eatery
xiǎofèi	tip, gratuity
xiǎo háizi	child
xiǎojié	Miss, young lady
xiǎomàibù	variety shop
xiǎomiè	to destroy, to wipe out, to uproot
xiǎoshí	hour
xiǎoxīn	to be careful
xiǎoxué	elementary school
xiǎo yìsi	a token of appreciation
xiārén	shrimp
Xiārén Guōba Tāng	Shrimp and Sizzling Rice

xiàtiān	Soup
xiāwū	summer
xià xuě	afternoon
xià yǔ	to snow
xīběi	to rain
xībian(r)	northwest
Xīcān	west side
Xīdān	Western food
	(name of a neighborhood in Peking)
xiē	several, some
xié	shoes
xiě	to write
xiè dù	to have diarrhea
xiěshang	to write on (something)
xiěxialai	to write down
xièxie	thank you
xīfàn	gruel of rice and water
xíguàn	to get used to, to become accustomed to; a habit
xīhóngshì	tomato (Peking)
xīhóngshìzhī	tomato juice (Peking)
Xīhú	West Lake
xīhuan	to like
xīhuǒ	to stall
Xīméndīng	(name of a neighborhood in Taipei)
xīn	to be new
xīn	'heart, mind'
xìn (yìfēng)	letter
xīnán	southwest
xìnfēng(r)	envelope
xíng	to be all right
xǐng	to wake up
xìng	to be surnamed
xíngli (yíjiàn)	baggage, luggage, suitcases
xīngqī	week
xīngqījǐ	what day of the week
Xīngqīrì	Sunday
Xīngqītiān	Sunday
Xīngqīyī (-èr...)	Monday (Tuesday...)
xìngqu	interest
xínggrén	pedestrian
Xīngrén Dòufu	Almond Pudding
Xīnhài Gémìng	the Hsinhai Revolution

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn  
Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn

xīnshuǐ  
xīnxian  
xìnzhi  
xiōngdì  
xiōngdì jiěmèi  
xióngmāo  
xǐshǒujiān  
xiū  
xiūhǎo  
xiū jià  
xiūjiàn

xiūli  
xiūlichǎng  
xiūxi  
xiūzhěng  
xīwang  
xǐ yīshang  
Xīzàng  
xǐzǎo  
xǐzǎofáng  
xīzhuāng  
xué  
xuědòu

xuésheng  
xuéxi  
xuěyā  
xuézhe  
Xūn Jī  
xūnliàn  
xūyào

ya  
yā  
yá  
yáng  
yǎng  
yáng ròu  
yángzhuāng  
yàngzi  
yànhuì

(Revolution of 1911)  
New China Bookstore (Peking)  
New China Dictionary

salary  
to be fresh  
stationery  
brothers  
brothers and sisters  
panda bear  
washroom  
to build, to erect  
to fix  
to take a vacation  
to build, to construct, to  
erect; to repair and build  
to fix, to repair  
repair garage  
to take a rest, to relax  
to repair, to put in order  
to hope, to wish  
to wash clothes  
Tibet  
to take a bath  
bathroom  
suit (Western-style)  
to study  
snow peas (term commonly used  
by Chinese in America)  
student  
to study, to learn (Peking)  
blood pressure  
scholar  
Smoked Chicken  
to train  
to need

alternate form of marker a  
duck  
tooth  
sheep  
to raise, to care for  
lamb  
Western-style dress  
kind, variety  
feast, banquet

yànhuìtīng	banquet hall
yānhuò	fireworks display
yǎnjìng(r)	eyeglasses
yánjiū	to study, to do research
yánjiūyuàn	graduate school
yánsè	color
yàn xuě	to have a blood test
yàn xuěyā	to have a blood pressure test
yào	to be necessary
yào	medicine
yào	to want
yào	to take (some amount of time)
yào	will, going to
yàoburán	otherwise
yàobushi...jiù shi...	if it's not..., then it is...
yàofāng	prescription
yàofāng	pharmacy
yàoǐn	to be important, to be urgent
yàopiàn	tablet of medicine
yāoqǐng	invitation
yàoshi	if
yàoshi	key
yàoshuǐ	liquid medicine
yāpò	to oppress; oppression
yáyī	dentist
yāzi	duck
yě	also
yě	used with 'any/at all' expressions
yěcān	picnic
yèli	at night
Yēlǚ Dàxué	Yale University
yěxǔ	perhaps, maybe
yèyú	outside one's occupation, spare-time, after work
yī	one
yībēi	one cup of (counter)
(yì)bēi kāfēi	a cup of coffee
yíci	one time
yìdiǎn(diǎn)	a little
yídìng	certainly, definitely

yīfu	clothes
yíge	a, an
yíge rén	alone
yígōng	all together
yíhàn	to regret (that something desirable will not happen)
yíhào (yīhào)	the first day of the month
Yíhéyuán (Yíhéyuán)	The Summer Palace
yíhòu	after
yíhòu	afterwards
yíhuǐr	a moment
yìjian	opinion
yíjiàn shì	a piece of business
yíjing (yǐjīng)	already
Yījiǔ nián	19__
yìkē	one capsule
yīliáo	medicine, medical treatment
yīlóng	one tier of a steamer
yílù píngān	Have a nice trip, Bon Voyage, (literally, 'a safe journey')
yílùshang	while traveling, on the trip
yǐnèi	within
yīnggāi	should, ought to
Yīngguo	England
Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	English-Chinese dictionary
yíng le	I've won
Yīngwen	English language
yíngyǎng	nourishment, nutrition
yínháng	bank
yīnqíng	engine
yīnwei	because
yìqǐ	together
yǐqián	before
yǐqián	ahead of time, before, in the past
yīshang (yíjiàn)	clothes
yīsheng	doctor, physician
yìshu	art; artistic
yìshuāng	a pair of
yìsi	meaning
yīwù rényuán	medical personnel
yíxià (yíxia)	(not translated, gives a

	casual feeling like reduplication)
yíxiàzi	all at once, at one fell swoop
yìxiē	some, several, a few
yíyàng	to be like, to be the same as
yīyào bǎoxiǎn	medical insurance
yīyuàn	hospital
Yīyue (Yīyue)	January
yìzhí	straight, up to now
yìzhǒng	a kind, one kind
yǐzi (yībǎ)	chair
yòng	to use; with
yònggōng	to be hardworking
yòng kuāizi	to use chopsticks; with chopsticks
yòng lái	to be used for the purpose of, in order to
yòng...lái jìsuan	if you use...to figure it out
yóu	oil, gasoline, fuel
yǒu	to have, there is/are
yòu	right (direction)
yòu	again
yòu...yòu...	both...and...
yòubian(r)	right side
yǒude	some
yǒude shíhou	sometimes
yǒu diǎn(r)	a little, somewhat, a bit
yòuér	toddler, young child
yòuéryuán	kindergarten
yǒuhǎo	friendly
yóuhuà(r)	oil painting
yóujiǎn	surface aerogram
yóulǎn shǒucè	sightseeing handbook, tourist guide
yǒu míng	to be famous
yóupiào (yìzhāng)	postage stamp
yǒu shì	to have business
yóutiáo	deep-fried twist
yóutǒng	mail box
yóuxì	to play; play, game, recreation



yǒu xiào	to be effective
Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn	Friendship Department Store (Peking)
yǒu yìsi	to be interesting
yóuyǒng	to swim
yǒu yòng	to be useful
yóuyuánhuì	garden party, carnival
yóuzhèngjú	post office
yú	fish
yuǎn	to be far
yuánlái	originally
yùbei	to prepare
yùchǎnqī	due date (for a birth)
yúchì	shark's fin
yuē	to invite, to make arrangements (with)
yuè	month
Yuè Cài	Canton school of Chinese cooking
yuèchū	the beginning of the month
yuèdǐ	the end of the month
yuè duō yuè hǎo	the more the better
yuēhǎo le	to have (successfully) made arrangements, appointments
yuèjīng	menstrual period
yuètái	platform
yùfáng	to prevent, preventative
Yùhuāyuán	the Imperial Garden
yùmǐ	corn
yùn	to ship, to transport
yùndòng	movement
yùnlai	to ship, to send here
yǔsǎn (yìbǎ)	umbrella
yǔyī	raincoat
Yúxiāng Qiézi	Yühsiang Eggplant
Yúyuán	Szechwan Garden
zài	to be someplace
zài	in, at, on (prepositional verb)
zài	then (in commands)
zài	again
zài	in the midst of (marker)

zàijiàn	of ongoing action)
zài jiē diànhuà	good-bye
	to be receiving a phone call,
	on the phone
zāng	to be dirty
zánmen	we (excludes the listener)
zǎo	good morning
zǎo	to be early
zǎochén	morning
zǎodiǎn	breakfast (Peking)
zǎofàn	breakfast
zāogāo	what a mess
zǎoshang	morning
zázhì (yìběn)	magazine
zěnme	how, why
zènme	so, in this way, to this
	degree
zěnmeyàng	to be how, how is _____
zhàcài	hot pickled cabbage
	(Szechwan)
zhàn	to occupy a space or time,
	to constitute a portion
	of an amount
zhàn	a stop
-zhāng	(counter for flat things)
zhàn gǎng	to stand guard
zhǎng	to grow
zhǎngdà	to grow up
zhāngdānzi	check, bill
zhāngfāng	cashier
zhǎnlǎn	to exhibit, exhibition
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	exhibition hall
zhǎnlǎnhuì	exhibition
zhànqilai	to stand up
zhàntái	platform
zhǎo	to look for
-zhào	to succeed in getting or
	obtaining something
zhǎo	to give change
zhào	to take, to photograph
zhào	according to
zhāodài	to be hospitable to,
	hospitality
zhàogu	to take care of, to look

zhào xiàng	after
zhàoxiàngjī	to take a picture
Zhā Xiāqiú (Zhà Xiāqiú)	camera
-zhe	Deep Fried Shrimp Balls
	(marker of duration of an action)
-zhě	(syllable indicating one who does the action, i.e., -er)
zhè-	this
zhèbian	this side
zhège	this
zhèi-	this
zhèibian(r)	this side
zhèicì	this time
zhèige	this
zhèige xīngqī	this week
zhèige yuē	this month
zhèihuǐr	this moment, at the moment (Peking)
zhèixie	these
zhèiyang	this kind, this sort
zhèi yíci	this time
zhèli	here
zhēn	really
zhēng	to cook something by steaming
zhèngcháng	to be normal
zhèngfǔ	government
zhènggèr	whole, entire; wholly, completely
zhēngui	to be precious, valuable
zhèng hǎo	just right
zhèngli	to straighten, to put in order
zhēnglǒng	metal or bamboo food steamer
zhěngxiū	to repair, to put in order
zhèngzài	in the middle of (doing something)
zhèngzhixué	political science
zhèngzhixuéjiā	political scientist
zhèngzhì xuéxí	political study session
zhēnjiǔ (zhēnjiū)	acupuncture
zhènme	so, in this way, to this degree
zhěntou	pillow

zhèr	here
-zhī	(counter for straight, stick-like objects)
-zhī	(counter for watches)
zhí	directly
zhǐ	only
zhǐ (yìzhāng)	paper
zhì	to cure
zhīchí	support
zhídáchē	non-stop bus
zhīdao	to know
zhígōng	staff and worker, employee (staff member or worker)
zhìhuì	wisdom
zhìliáo	to treat, to cure
zhīma jiāng	sesame paste
zhī/nèi	within
zhīpiào	checks
zhīpiàoběn	checkbook
zhìqì	will, ambition
...zhī yī	one of the...
zhìzào	to manufacture
zhìzàochǎng	manufacturing plant
zhōng (yíge)	clock
zhōng	o'clock
-zhōng	kind
zhōng	to be swollen
zhōng	to be heavy
zhōng	to plant, to grow (something)
Zhōngcān	Chinese food
zhōngdiǎn	key point, central point
zhōngfàn	lunch
Zhōngguo huà	Chinese language (spoken)
Zhōngguo Lǚxíngshè	China Travel Agency
<u>Zhōngguo Wénxué Shǐ</u>	<u>History of Chinese Literature</u>
zhōngjiān	the middle, in between
Zhōngshānlíng	the name of Sun Yatsen's tomb
Zhōngshān Běilù	Chungshan North Road (Taipei)
zhōngtóu	hour
Zhōngwen	Chinese language
zhōngwu	noon
zhōngxīn	center
zhōngxué	middle school (equal to junior and senior high school)

zhōngyào	to be important
Zhōucháo	Chou Dynasty (1122-255 B.C.)
zhū	pig
zhù	to stay at, to live in
zhuàng (chuàng)	to bump into, to collide with
zhuǎngào	to pass on a message, to inform
zhǔchí jiéhūn	to preside at a marriage ceremony (i.e., to give the bride away)
zhǔkè	guest of honor
zhǔnbèi	to prepare, to plan
zhūozí (yìzhāng)	table
zhǔxí	chairman
zhùyá	cavity, decayed tooth
zhǔyào	to be essential
zhùyì	to pay attention
zhǔyì	principles, -ism
zhù yīyuàn	to stay at a hospital
zhùzai	to stay at, live in
zhùzuò	writings, works
zì	character (Chinese writing)
zìdiǎn (yìběn)	dictionary
zìdòng	automatic
zìdòngguà	to automate
zìjǐ	oneself (yourself, myself, etc.)
Zǐjìnchéng	the Forbidden City
zìliúdì	private plot of land
zǒngde lái shuō	on the whole
zǒng jīnglǐ	general manager, chief executive officer
zǒngshi	always
zǒu	to go
zǒu	to leave
zǒucuò le	to have gone the wrong way
zǒudao	to walk to
zǒudao tóu	to walk to the end (of something)
zǒudexiaqu	to be able to walk down
zǒuguò le	to have walked past
zǒuláng	corridor
zǒuzhe	walking
zǒuzou	to take a walk
zú	to be enough, to be

zuànshí	sufficient
zūchuqu	diamond
zǔfù	to rent out
zǔmǔ	paternal grandfather
zuì	paternal grandmother
zuìhǎo	most, -est
	it would be best
zuìhòu	the last, at the end
Zuì Jī	Drunken Chicken
zuìjìn	most recently
zuìshǎo	at least, at the minimum
zǔguó	ancestral homeland, fatherland
-zuò	(counter for massive objects)
zuǒ	left (direction)
zuò	to make
zuò	to do
zuò	to take, to go by, to ride, to sit
zuò	to ride (prepositional verb)
zuǒbian(r)	left side
zuòbuwan	to not be able to finish doing
zuòdewan	to be able to finish doing
zuòdao	to ride to
zuò fān	to cook
zuòguò	to ride past
zuòjiā	professional writer
zuòhǎo le	to have finished doing (something), (something has been finished)
zuóliào	condiments, ingredients
zuò mǎimai	to do business
zuò shì	to work
zuótian	yesterday
zuòwán	to finish doing
zuòyè	homework
zuòyong	use, function
zuòyòu	approximately, about
zuòzhě	author
zǔzhi	organization, to organize
zūzhōng	to rent for farming